

1 **International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes**

2 **Prokaryotic Code (2022 Revision)**

3

4 **Aharon Oren¹, David R. Arahal², Markus Göker³, Edward R. B. Moore⁴, Ramon Rossello-**
5 **Mora⁵, and Iain C. Sutcliffe⁶ (Editors)**

6

7 ¹Institute of Life Sciences, The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, The Edmond J. Safra Campus,
8 9190401 Jerusalem, Israel

9 ²Departamento de Microbiología y Ecología and Colección Española de Cultivos Tipo (CECT),
10 Universitat de València, 46100 Burjassot (Valencia), Spain

11 ³Leibniz Institute DSMZ – German Collection of Microorganisms and Cell Cultures,
12 Department of Bioinformatics and Databases, Inhoffenstrasse 7B, 38124 Braunschweig,
13 Germany

14 ⁴Department of Infectious Disease and Culture Collection University of Gothenburg (CCUG),
15 Institute for Biomedicine, Sahlgrenska Academy, University of Gothenburg, SE-402 34
16 Gothenburg, Sweden

17 ⁵Grup de Microbiologia Marina, IMEDEA (CSIC-UIB), C/Miquel Marqués 21, 07190 Esporles,
18 Illes Balears, Spain

19 ⁶Northumbria University, Newcastle Upon Tyne NE1 8ST, UK

20

21 Corresponding Author: Aharon Oren (aharon.oren@mail.huji.ac.il)

22 **Table of Contents**

23

	Page
Preface	...
Chapter 1. General Considerations	...
Chapter 2. Principles	...
Chapter 3. Rules of Nomenclature with Recommendations	...
Chapter 4. Advisory Notes	...
Appendix 1. Codes of Nomenclature	...
Appendix 2. Approved Lists of Bacterial Names	...
Appendix 3. Published Sources for Names of Prokaryotic, Algal, Protozoal, Fungal, and Viral Taxa	...
Appendix 4. Conserved and Rejected Names of Prokaryotic Taxa	...
Appendix 5. Opinions Relating to the Nomenclature of Prokaryotes	...
Appendix 6. Published Sources for Recommended Minimal Descriptions	...
Appendix 7. Publication of a New Name	...
Appendix 8. Preparation of a Request for an Opinion	...
Appendix 9. Orthography	...
Appendix 10. Intrasubspecific Subdivisions	...
Appendix 11. The Provisional Status of <i>Candidatus</i>	...
Appendix 12. The van Niel International Prize	...
Appendix 13. Activities of the Congresses	...
References	...

24

25 **PREFACE**

26

27 Fourteen years have passed since the International Committee on Systematics of
28 Prokaryotes (ICSP) at its plenary meeting in Istanbul in 2008 approved the previous version
29 of the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes (ICNP, the 'Prokaryotic Code', the*
30 *'Code')*, and we thank the Editors for overseeing its publication in 2019 [1]. Updating the
31 *Prokaryotic Code* was long overdue in view of the large number of subsequent proposals to
32 emend the General Considerations, Principles, Rules and Recommendations, and
33 Appendices of the *Code*. In the period 2008-2020, 45 such proposals were published in the
34 *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* [2]. Most of those were
35 only recently discussed and voted on by the members of the ICSP, following the adoption of
36 revised statutes in 2019 [3], which transferred responsibility for dealing with proposed
37 emendations from the Judicial Commission to the Editorial Board of the *ICNP*. The current
38 Editorial Board of the *ICNP*, appointed in 2020, has therefore prepared proposals for
39 emendation of the *Code*, which were submitted for balloting among the full and co-opted
40 members of the ICSP, in accordance with its statutes [3]. The vote took place in April-June
41 2022 and we here present the 2022 revision of the *Code*, incorporating the changes
42 approved by the voting members of the ICSP.

43 To comply with Article 4(d) of the statutes of the ICSP that state that the business of the
44 ICSP should be conducted publicly, the voting was preceded by a six-month period (July-
45 December 2021), during which anyone interested could post comments via an online
46 platform [4]. The editorial board of the ICSP is pleased with the lively discussions that
47 developed on many issues relating to the *Code*. Numerous suggestions and ideas to improve
48 the text of the *Code* were brought forward during this public discussion and many are
49 incorporated in the current revision.

50 Two previously approved major changes are also included in the new revision:

- 51 (1) The rank of phylum was added to the ranks covered by the rules of the *Code*. This
52 important change was approved by the ICSP in a separate ballot held in 2021 after a
53 public discussion was held on this topic [5].
- 54 (2) The formal inclusion of the *Cyanobacteria* in the rules of the *Code* [6], a change that
55 required modification of numerous rules to harmonize the treatment of the
56 nomenclature of the *Cyanobacteria* with the relevant rules of the *International Code*
57 *of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants* [7]. This change was also approved by
58 the ICSP in a separate ballot held in 2021, following a public discussion.

59 Numerous minor modifications of the *Code* have been made that clarify its meaning,
60 affecting topics such as notes, nomenclatural types, and effective publications, as well as
61 valid publication, legitimacy, priority and orthography of names.

62 The Judicial Commission of the ICSP issued numerous opinions in the past few years, and
63 Appendix 5 – Opinions Relating to the Nomenclature of Prokaryotes – has been updated to
64 include the latest opinions issued. Based on those opinions, Appendix 4 – Conserved and
65 Rejected Names of Prokaryotic Taxa – has been updated, as well.

66 Numerous additions have been made in Appendix 9 – Orthography. The new version of
67 this Appendix should be useful for assisting authors in proposing correctly formed names
68 that comply with the rules of the *Code*.

69 We aimed to shorten and simplify the *ICNP* where possible. Therefore, we have not
70 reprinted the prefaces to the earlier versions of the *Code* and have not included the
71 extended information about the older versions of the different codes of nomenclature
72 (Appendix 1), the recipients of the van Niel International Prize prior to 2014 (Appendix 12)
73 and activities of the congresses prior to 2019 (Appendix 13). These changes were endorsed
74 by the ICSP. The earlier information is available in the 2008 revision of the *ICNP* [1].

75 A proposal to allow the use of gene sequences as type material for the naming of
76 prokaryotes was rejected by the ICSP in 2020 [8]. The provisional status *Candidatus* can be
77 used for naming uncultivated prokaryotes, although the nomenclature of *Candidatus* taxa is
78 not incorporated in the Rules of the *ICNP* and, therefore, such names have no standing in
79 prokaryote nomenclature. Appendix 11 has been emended to better explain the status of
80 *Candidatus* names.

81 We thank the staff of the Microbiology Society and all those involved in the production
82 of the *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* for their
83 cooperation, enabling the timely publication of this revision of the *Code*. We anticipate that
84 this document will serve the community of microbiologists and all others who deal with
85 names of prokaryotes in the coming years. That said, the *Code* remains a ‘living document’
86 and we anticipate – indeed welcome – proposals for emendations to further refine it, which
87 should be made following the process outlined in Article 13(b) of the ICSP statutes [3].

88

89 Aharon Oren

90 David R. Arahal

91 Markus Göker

92 Edward R.B. Moore

93 Ramon Rossello-Mora

94 Iain C. Sutcliffe

95

96 July, 2022

97 **CHAPTER 1. GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS**

98

99 **General Consideration 1**

100

101 The progress of prokaryotic microbiology is advanced by a precise and standardized system
102 of nomenclature accepted by the international community of microbiologists.

103

104 **General Consideration 2**

105

106 Scientific names must be regulated by internationally accepted Rules, to achieve and
107 maintain order in nomenclature.

108

109 **General Consideration 3**

110

111 The Rules that govern the nomenclature used in the biological sciences are embodied in
112 International Codes of Nomenclature (see Appendix 1 for a list of these Codes).

113

114 **General Consideration 4**

115

116 Rules of nomenclature do not govern the delimitation of taxa nor determine their relations.
117 The Rules prescribe the procedures for creating and proposing new names and for assessing
118 the correctness of the names applied to defined taxa.

119

120 **General Consideration 5**

121

122 This *Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* applies to all Prokaryotes. The nomenclature of
123 eukaryotic microbial groups is provided for by other Codes: fungi and algae by the
124 *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants*; protozoa by the
125 *International Code of Zoological Nomenclature*. The nomenclature of viruses is provided for
126 by the *International Code of Virus Classification and Nomenclature* (see Appendix 1)

127

128 *Note.* "Prokaryotes" covers those organisms that are variously recognized as e.g., *Archaea*,
129 *Archaeobacteria*, *Archaeobacteria*, *Bacteria*, *Cyanobacteria*, *Cyanophyceae*, *Eubacteria*,
130 *Schizomycetes*, and *Schizophycetes*.

131

132 If a taxon originally assigned to the *Cyanophyceae/Cyanobacteria* was named under the
133 provisions of the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants*, any of its
134 names need satisfy only the requirements of that *Code* for status equivalent to valid
135 publication under the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes*.

136

137 **General Consideration 6**

138

139 This *Code* is divided into Principles, Rules and Recommendations.

140

141 (1) The *Principles* (Chapter 2) form the basis of the *Code*, and the Rules and
142 Recommendations are derived from them.

143

144 (2) The *Rules* (Chapter 3) are designed to make the Principles effective, to reassess the
145 nomenclature of the past and to provide for the nomenclature of the future.

146

147 (3) The *Recommendations* (Chapter 3) deal with subsidiary points and are appended to the
148 Rules which they supplement. Recommendations do not have the force of Rules; they are
149 intended to be guides to desirable practice in the future. Names contrary to a
150 Recommendation cannot be rejected for this reason.

151

152 (4) Provisions for emendations of Rules, for special exceptions to Rules, and for
153 interpretation of the Rules have been made by the establishment of the International
154 Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes (ICSP) and the ICSP Judicial Commission, which
155 acts on behalf of the ICSP (see Rule 1b and Statutes of the International Committee on the
156 Systematics of Prokaryotes). Opinions issued by the Judicial Commission become effective
157 after receipt of seven or more affirmative votes from Commissioners, but may be rescinded
158 by the ICSP, as provided for in the ICSP Statutes. The official journal of the ICSP is the
159 *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* (IJSEM), formerly
160 *International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology* (IJSB), formerly the *International Bulletin of*
161 *Bacteriological Nomenclature and Taxonomy* (IBBNT). (Some other journal could be specified
162 by the ICSP if required. Such possible future specification is implicit in the use of
163 “*International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology*” or “IJSEM” throughout
164 this *Code*, but is not always repeated at each mention.)

165

166 (5) *Appendices* are added to assist in the application of this *Code* (see Table of Contents).

167

168 (6) Definitions of certain words used in the *Code* are provided. Such words are indicated in
169 boldface type in the clause concerned, and they may be printed in boldface type elsewhere
170 in this *Code*.

171

172 (7) The *Notes* added to General Considerations, Principles, Rules and Recommendations are
173 intended to clarify the preceding text and are an integral part of the corresponding text.

174

175 **General Consideration 7**

176

177 Nomenclature deals with the following:

178 (1) Terms used to denote the **taxonomic categories**, e.g., “species”, “family” and “phylum”.

179 (2) Relative ranks of the categories (see Rule 5).

180 (3) Names applied to individual taxa. A taxonomic group is referred to throughout this *Code*
181 as a **taxon**; plural, **taxa**.

182 “**Taxonomic group**” is used in this *Code* to refer to any group of organisms treated as a
183 named group in a taxonomy; it may or may not correspond to a category.

184

185 Examples: Name of a species, *Pseudomonas* (generic name) *aeruginosa* (specific epithet);
186 name of a genus, *Pseudomonas*; name of a family, *Pseudomonadaceae*; name of an order,
187 *Pseudomonadales*.

188

189 **General Consideration 8**

190

191 The *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* is an instrument of scientific
192 communication. Names have meaning only in the context in which they were formed and
193 used.

194 **CHAPTER 2. PRINCIPLES**

195

196 **Principle 1**

197

198 The essential points in nomenclature are to:

199 (1) Aim at stability of names;

200 (2) Avoid or reject the names that cause error or confusion;

201 (3) Avoid the useless creation of names.

202 (4) Nothing in this *Code* may restrict the freedom of taxonomic thought or action.

203

204 *Note.* “**Name**” in this *Code*, unless otherwise indicated, is used to refer to names applied to
205 prokaryotes that have been validly published, whether legitimate or illegitimate (see
206 Chapter 3, Section 3).

207

208 **Principle 2**

209

210 The nomenclature of prokaryotes is not independent of botanical and zoological
211 nomenclature. When naming new taxa in the rank of genus or higher, due consideration is
212 to be given to avoiding names which are regulated by the *International Code of Zoological*
213 *Nomenclature* and the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants*.

214

215 *Note.* This principle takes effect with publication of acceptance of this change by the ICSP
216 (from 1 January 2001) and is not retroactive.

217

218 For information about lists of names of zoological and botanical taxa, see Appendix 3.

219

220 **Principle 3**

221

222 The names of all taxa are Latin or latinized words treated as Latin, regardless of their origin.

223 They are usually taken from Latin or Greek (see Chapter 3, Section 9, and Appendix 9).

224

225 **Principle 4**

226

227 The purpose of giving a name to a taxon is to supply a means of referring to it rather than to
228 indicate the characters or the history of the taxon.

229

230 **Principle 5**

231

232 The application of the names of taxa is determined by means of nomenclatural types,
233 referred to in this *Code* as types (see Chapter 3, Section 4).

234

235 **Principle 6**

236

237 The correct name of a taxon is based upon **valid publication, legitimacy and priority of**
238 **publication** (see Chapter 3, Section 5).

239

240 **Principle 7**

241

242 A name of a taxon has no status under the Rules and no claim to recognition unless it is
243 validly published (see Chapter 3, Section 5).

244

245 **Principle 8**

246

247 Each phylum or taxon of a lower rank with a given **circumscription, position, and rank** can
248 bear only one correct name, i.e., the earliest that is in accordance with the Rules of this
249 *Code*. Provision has been made for exceptions to this Principle (see Rules 23a and 23b).

250

251 *Note 1.* The name of a species is a binary combination of generic name and specific epithet.

252

253 *Note 2.* (i) **Circumscription** of the taxon is an indication of its limits; (ii) **position** of a taxon is
254 an indication in which higher taxon it is placed (see also Rule 23a); and (iii) **rank** of the taxon
255 is its level in the hierarchical sequence of taxonomic categories.

256

257 **Principle 9**

258

259 The name of a taxon should not be changed without sufficient reason; if necessary, changes
260 should be based upon further taxonomic studies or on the necessity of expunging a name
261 that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code*.

262 **CHAPTER 3. RULES OF NOMENCLATURE WITH RECOMMENDATIONS**

263

264 **Section 1. General**

265

266 **Rule 1a**

267

268 This revision of the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* supersedes all
269 previous revisions of the *Bacteriological Code* and the *International Code of Nomenclature of*
270 *Prokaryotes* (see Appendix 1). It shall be cited as the *Prokaryotic Code* (2022 Revision) and
271 will apply from the date of publication online. **THE PUBLISHING TEAM COULD POSSIBLY**
272 **FINALISE THE TYPESET DOC AND INSERT A SPECIFIC DATE AND HOLD ONLINE PUBLICATION**
273 **TILL THAT DATE E.G. "ONLINE (1 OCTOBER 2022)."**

274

275 **Rule 1b**

276

277 Alterations to this *Code* can be made only by the ICSP. Proposals for modifications should be
278 made as specified in the Statutes of the ICSP.

279

280 **Rule 2**

281

282 The Rules of this *Code* are retroactive, except where specified.

283

284 Examples: Rule 18a, Rule 30.

285

286 **Rule 3**

287

288 Names contrary to a Rule cannot be maintained, except that the ICSP, on the
289 recommendation of the Judicial Commission, may make exceptions to the Rules (see Rule
290 23a).

291

292 **Rule 4**

293

294 In the absence of a relevant Rule or where the consequences of a Rule are uncertain, a
 295 summary in which all pertinent facts are outlined should be submitted to the Judicial
 296 Commission for consideration (see Appendix 8 for preparation of a Request for an Opinion).

297

298 **Section 2. Ranks of Taxa**

299

300 **Rule 5a**

301

302 Definitions of the taxonomic categories may vary with individual opinion, but the relative
 303 order of these categories may not be altered in any classification.

304

305 **Rule 5b**

306

307 The taxonomic categories above and including subspecies, which are covered by these Rules,
 308 are given below in ascending taxonomic rank. Those in the left column are to be recognized;
 309 those in the right column are to be considered optional. The Latin equivalents are given in
 310 parentheses.

311

	Subspecies (<i>Subspecies</i>)
Species (<i>Species</i>)	
	Subgenus (<i>Subgenus</i>)
Genus (<i>Genus</i>)	
	Tribe (<i>Tribus</i>)
Family (<i>Familia</i>)	
	Suborder (<i>Subordo</i>)
Order (<i>Ordo</i>)	
	Subclass (<i>Subclassis</i>)
Class (<i>Classis</i>)	
Phylum (<i>Phylum</i>)	

312

313 **Rule 5c**

314

315 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 5c has been deleted. This rule remains here only as a
 316 placeholder, in order to avoid renumbering Rule 5d. Rule 5c should not be cited.

317

318 **Rule 5d**

319

320 Taxa below the rank of subspecies (**infrasubspecific subdivisions**) are not covered by the
321 Rules of this *Code*, but see Rule 14a and Appendix 10.

322

323 **Section 3. Naming of Taxa**

324

325 **General**

326

327 **Rule 6**

328

329 The scientific names of all taxa must be treated as Latin; names of taxa above the rank of
330 species are single words.

331

332 When proposing new names, the etymology must be provided. Words from languages other
333 than Latin or classical Greek should be avoided as long as equivalents exist in Latin or
334 classical Greek or can be constructed by combining word elements from these two
335 languages. Exceptions: names derived from typical local items, such as food, drinks or
336 geographical localities for which no Latin or classical Greek names exist.

337

338 With effect from 1 January 2023, names that end on *-myces*, *-phyces*, *-phyta*, or *-virus* must
339 not be used, to avoid confusion with the names of eukaryotic or virus taxa. This restriction is
340 not retroactive.

341

342 **Recommendation 6**

343

344 To form new prokaryotic names and epithets, authors are advised as follows:

345

346 (1) Avoid names or epithets that are long or difficult to pronounce.

347

348 (2) Make names or epithets that have an agreeable form that is easy to pronounce when
349 latinized

350

351 (3) Words from languages other than Latin or Classical Greek should be avoided if
352 equivalents exist in Latin or Classical Greek or can be constructed by combining word
353 elements from these two languages.

354

355 Exceptions: names derived from typical local items, such as foods, drinks, or
356 geographical localities for which no Latin or Greek names exist.

357

358 (4) Do not adopt unpublished names or epithets found in authors' notes, without the
359 authors' approval.

360

361 (5) The Greek K and Z and the Medieval Latin J (for consonantic I) may be maintained to
362 avoid confusion.

363

364 Examples: *Actinokineospora* instead of *Actinocineospora*; *Flectobacillus major* instead of
365 *Flectobacillus maior*.

366

367 (6) The abbreviation M.L. stands for "Medieval Latin" not "Modern Latin"; for the latter,
368 N.L. ("Neo Latin") is to be used.

369

370 (7) If genus names or specific epithets are formed from personal names, they should
371 contain only the untruncated family (rarely given) name of a person. Authors should not
372 name organisms after themselves or co-authors.

373

374 ***Names of Taxa above the Rank of Genus up to and including Order***

375

376 **Rule 7**

377

378 The name of a taxon above the rank of genus, up to and including order, is a substantive or
379 an adjective used as a substantive of Latin or Classical Greek origin or a latinized word. It is in
380 the feminine gender, the plural number, and written with an initial capital letter.

381

382 Example: Family *Pseudomonadaceae*.

383

384 ***Names of Taxa above the Rank of Order***

385

386 **Rule 8**

387

388 The name of each taxon above the rank of order is a Latin or latinized word.

389

390 The name of a phylum is in the neuter gender, the plural number, and written with an initial
391 capital letter. The name is formed by the addition of the suffix *-ota* to the stem of the name
392 of the designated type genus. The Judicial Commission can make exceptions regarding the
393 use of the ending *-ota* when forming the name of a phylum.

394

395 The name of a class is in the plural number, and written with an initial capital letter.

396

397 Until 31 December 2011, new names of classes that were considered to have been validly
398 published (see Rule 27) prior to or on that date were to be formed preferably in conformity
399 with Recommendation 6.

400

401 With effect from 1 January 2012, new names of classes that are considered to have been
402 validly published (see Rule 27) on or after that date are in the neuter gender and are formed
403 by the addition of the suffix *-ia* to the stem of the name of the type genus of the type order
404 of the class.

405

406 The name of a subclass is in the feminine gender, plural number, and written with an initial
407 capital letter. The name is formed by the addition of the suffix *-idae* to the stem of the
408 name of the type genus of the type order of the subclass.

409

410 Example: Phylum— *Bacteroidota*; Class— *Ktedonobacteria*; Subclass— *Sphaerobacteridae*.

411

412 ***Names of Taxa between Subclass and Genus (Order, Suborder, Family, Tribe)***

413

414 **Rule 9**

415

416 The name of a taxon between subclass and genus is formed by the addition of the
417 appropriate suffix to the stem of the name of the type genus (see Rule 15). These suffixes
418 are presented in Table 1.

419

420 **Table 1. Suffixes for Categories between Subclass and Genus**

421

Rank	Suffix	Example
Order	–ales	<i>Pseudomonadales</i>
Suborder	–ineae	<i>Pseudomonadineae</i>
Family	–aceae	<i>Pseudomonadaceae</i>
Tribe	–eae	<i>Pseudomonadeae</i>

422

423 **Names of Genera and Subgenera**

424

425 **Rule 10a**

426

427 The name of a genus or subgenus is a substantive, or an adjective used as a substantive, in
 428 the singular number in the nominative case, and written with an initial capital letter. The
 429 name may be taken from any source and may even be composed in an arbitrary manner. It is
 430 treated as a Latin substantive.

431

432 Examples: Single Greek stem, *Clostridium*; two Greek stems, *Haemophilus*; single Latin stem,
 433 *Spirillum*; two Latin stems, *Lactobacillus*; hybrid name, Latin-Greek stems, *Flavobacterium*;
 434 latinized personal name, *Shigella*; arbitrary name, *Afipia*, *Desemzia*, *Waddlia*, or *Cedecea*.

435

436 Words from languages other than Latin or Greek should be avoided as parts of genus or
 437 subgenus names as long as equivalents exist in Latin or Greek or can be constructed by
 438 combining word elements from these two languages. Exceptions can be made for names
 439 derived from typical local items such as food, drink or geographical localities for which no
 440 Latin or Greek names exist, or for names based on acronyms. As from January 2001, newly
 441 proposed names must not be later homonyms of names in use in botany or zoology (see
 442 Principle 2).

443

444 **Recommendation 10a**

445

446 The following Recommendations apply when forming new generic or subgeneric names:

447

448 (1) Refrain from naming genera and subgenera after persons unconnected with
449 microbiology or, at least, with natural science.

450 (2) Give a feminine form to all personal generic and subgeneric names, whether they
451 commemorate a man or a woman (see Rule 63).

452

453 **Rule 10b**

454

455 Generic and subgeneric names are subject to the same Rules and Recommendations, except
456 that Rule 10c applies only to subgeneric names.

457

458 **Rule 10c**

459

460 The name of a subgenus, when included with the name of a species, is placed in parentheses
461 along with the abbreviation "subgen." between the generic name and specific epithet. When
462 included, the citation should be inserted before closure of the parentheses.

463

464 Example: *Acetobacter* (subgen. *Gluconoacetobacter*) *liquefaciens* or *Acetobacter* (subgen.
465 *Gluconoacetobacter* Yamada and Kondo 1985) *liquefaciens* (Asai 1935) Yamada and Kondo
466 1985.

467

468 **Rule 11**

469

470 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 11 has been deleted. This rule remains here only as a
471 placeholder in order to avoid renumbering Rules 12 and above. Rule 11 should not be cited.

472

473 ***Names of Species***

474

475 **Rule 12a**

476

477 The name of a species is a **binary combination** consisting of the name of the genus followed
478 by a single **specific epithet**.

479

480 If a specific epithet is formed from two or more words, then the words are to be joined. If
481 the words were not joined at the time of valid publication, then the epithet is not to be

482 rejected but the form is to be corrected by joining the words, which can be done by any
483 author. If an epithet has been hyphenated, the parts should be joined. Such corrections of
484 an epithet do not affect the status and date of valid publication of the name.

485

486 Example: *Nocardia otitidis-caviarum* has been corrected to *Nocardia otitidiscaviarum*, or
487 *Propionibacterium acidi-propionici* has been corrected to *Propionibacterium acidipropionici*,
488 or *Treponema paraluis-cuniculi* has been corrected to *Treponema paraluisuniculi*.

489

490 **Rule 12b**

491

492 No specific or subspecific epithets within the same genus may be the same if based on
493 different types (see Rules 13c, 40d and Section 9).

494

495 Example: *Bacillus pallidus* Scholz *et al.* 1988 is based on the nomenclatural type, strain H12;
496 the specific epithet *pallidus* cannot be used for *Bacillus pallidus* Zhou *et al.* 2008, another
497 bacterium whose name is based on a different type.

498

499 **Rule 12c**

500

501 A specific epithet may be taken from any source and may even be composed arbitrarily.

502

503 Example: *thetaitaomicron* in *Bacteroides thetaitaomicron* derived from a combination of
504 the Greek letters *theta*, *iota* and *omicron*.

505

506 Words from languages other than Latin or Greek should be avoided as parts of a specific
507 epithet as long as equivalents exist in Latin or Greek or can be constructed by combining
508 word elements from these two languages. Exceptions can be made for names derived from
509 typical local items, such as foods, drinks or geographical localities for which no Latin or
510 Greek names exist or for names based on acronyms.

511

512 Example: *safensis* in *Bacillus safensis*, arbitrarily derived from SAF (the spacecraft-assembly
513 facility at the Jet Propulsion Laboratory, Pasadena, CA, USA).

514

515 A specific epithet must be treated in one of the three following ways:

516

517 (1) As an adjective in the singular number in the nominative case that must agree in gender
518 with the generic name.

519

520 Example: *aureus* in *Staphylococcus aureus*.

521

522 (2) As a substantive (noun) in apposition in the nominative case

523

524 Example: *Blautia obeum*.

525

526 (3) As a substantive (noun) in the genitive case.

527

528 Example: *coli* in *Escherichia coli*.

529

530 **Recommendation 12c**

531

532 Authors should attend to the following Recommendations, and those of Recommendation 6,
533 when forming specific epithets.

534

535 (1) Choose a specific epithet that gives some indication of a property or of the source of the
536 species.

537

538 (2) Avoid those that express a character common to all, or nearly all, the species of a genus.

539

540 (3) Specific epithets should not honour the author or co-authors of the proposed species or
541 subspecies, or any persons not connected with microbiology or at least with natural science.

542

543 (4) Avoid in the same genus epithets which are very much alike, especially those that differ
544 only in their last letters (see Rule 56a(4)).

545

546 (5) Avoid the use of the genitive and the adjectival forms of the same specific epithet to
547 refer to two different species of the same genus (see Rule 63).

548

549 (6) If an ordinal adjective used for enumeration is chosen, then they may include numbers
550 up to ten.

551

552 Example: *primus, secundus*.

553

554 ***Names of Subspecies***

555

556 **Rule 13a**

557

558 The name of a subspecies is a **ternary combination** consisting of the name of a genus
559 followed by a specific epithet, the abbreviation "subsp." (*subspecies*), and finally the
560 **subspecific epithet**.

561

562 Example: *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *spizizenii* Nakamura *et al.* 1999.

563

564 **Rule 13b**

565

566 A subspecific epithet is formed in the same way as a specific epithet. When adjectival in
567 form, it agrees in gender with the generic name.

568

569 **Rule 13c**

570

571 No two subspecies within the same species or within the same genus may bear the same
572 subspecific epithet (see also Rules 12b and 40d).

573

574 **Rule 13d**

575

576 A subspecies that includes the type of the species must bear the same epithet as the species
577 (see also Rules 40d and 45).

578

579 ***Names of Infrasubspecific Subdivisions***

580

581 **Rule 14a**

582

583 The designations of the various taxa below the rank of subspecies are not subject to the
 584 Rules and Recommendations of this *Code* (for advice on their nomenclature, see Appendix
 585 10).

586

587 **Rule 14b**

588

589 A Latin or latinized infrasubspecific designation may be elevated by a subsequent author to
 590 the status of a subspecies or species name, providing that the resulting name is in
 591 conformity with the Rules. If so elevated, for purposes of priority, it ranks from its date of
 592 elevation and is attributed to the author who elevated it, provided that the author who
 593 elevated it observes Rule 27.

594

595 Example: *Pseudomonas cannabina* (ex Šutič and Dowson 1959) Gardan *et al.* 1999; elevation
 596 of *Pseudomonas syringae* pathovar *Cannabina* of (Šutič and Dowson 1959) Young *et al.* 1978
 597 by Gardan *et al.* [4].

598

599 **Section 4. Nomenclatural Types and Their Designation**

600

601 **General**

602

603 **Rule 15**

604

605 A taxon consists of one or more elements. For each named taxon of the various taxonomic
 606 categories (listed below), there shall be designated a single **nomenclatural type**. The
 607 nomenclatural type, referred to in this *Code* as “**type**”, is that element of the taxon with
 608 which the name is permanently associated, whether as a correct name or as a synonym. The
 609 nomenclatural type is not necessarily the most typical or representative element of the
 610 taxon. The types are dealt with in Rules 16–22.

611

612 Types of the various taxonomic categories are presented in Table 2.

613

614 **Table 2.** *Taxonomic Categories*

615

Taxonomic category	Type
--------------------	------

Subspecies Species	Designated strain; in special cases the place of the type strain may be taken by a description, preserved specimen, or an illustration (see Rule 18a(1))
Subgenus Genus	Designated species
Tribe Family Suborder Order	Genus on whose name the name of the higher taxon is based
Subclass Class	One of the contained orders
Phylum	One of the contained genera

616

617

618 **Rule 16**

619

620 The type of a taxon must be designated by the author(s) at the time the name of the taxon is
621 published in the IJSEM (see Rules 15, 18a, b, f, 20a-c, 21a, 22, 27(3)), unless the type of the
622 taxon can be inferred according to Rules 20c, 20e, 21a, 21b or 22.

623

624 *Note.* Authors who intend to publish the name in the IJSEM with reference to a description
625 or listing of the properties of the taxon that has appeared in an effective publication under
626 Rule 27(2) must also designate the type when publishing that description.

627

628 *Note.* If a type has not been designated in the effective publication, then the type must be
629 designated at the time of publication in IJSEM, in accordance with the Rules of this *Code*.

630

631 **Rule 17**

632

633 The type determines the application of the name of a taxon if the taxon is subsequently
634 divided or united with another taxon.

635

636 Example: Ash *et al.* [9] proposed that the genus *Bacillus* be divided into the genera *Bacillus*
637 and *Paenibacillus*, and the genus which contained the type species *Bacillus subtilis* must be
638 named *Bacillus*.

639

640 ***Type of a Species or Subspecies***

641

642 **Rule 18a**

643

644 Whenever possible, the type of a species or subspecies is a designated strain.

645 The type strain is made up of living cultures of an organism, which are descended from a

646 strain designated as the nomenclatural type. The strain should have been maintained in

647 pure culture and should agree closely to its characters with those in the original description

648 (see Chapter 4C). The type strain may be designated in various ways (see Rules 18b, 18c, and

649 18d).

650

651 (1) Until 31 December 2000, where a type strain has not so far been maintained in

652 laboratory cultures or for which a type strain does not exist, a description, preserved

653 specimen, or illustration (see also Rule 18f) may be designated as the type.

654

655 Example: Non-cultivated, *Oscillospira guilliermondii* Chatton and Perard 1913.

656

657 (2) As from 1 January 2001, no further descriptions, preserved (non-viable) specimens, or

658 illustrations may be designated as the type. This does not affect nomenclatural types

659 designated under Rule 18a(1) until 31 December 2000.

660

661 (3) For species (or subspecies) of *Cyanobacteria* described under the provisions of the662 *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants*, the type designated under663 that *Code* is also recognized as the type under the *International Code of Nomenclature of*664 *Prokaryotes*. In cases of homonymy, wherein the name of a cyanobacterial taxon was

665 published under both codes, the oldest name has priority.

666

667 Example: *Prochlorococcus* Chisholm *et al.* 1992 and not *Prochlorococcus* Chisholm *et al.*

668 2001.

669

670 **Rule 18b Designation by original author(s)**

671

672 If the author(s) of the name of a species or subspecies unambiguously designated a type
673 strain in the effective publication, then this strain shall be accepted as the type strain and
674 may be referred to as the **holotype**.

675

676 **Rule 18c Designation as neotype**

677

678 If a strain on which the original description was based cannot be found, a **neotype** strain
679 may be proposed. A **neotype** strain must be proposed (**proposed neotype**) in the IJSEM,
680 together with citation of the author(s) of the name, a description or reference to a
681 description or listing of the properties of the taxon that has appeared in an effectively
682 published description, and a record of the publically accessible culture collection(s) where
683 the strain is deposited (see also Note 1 to Rule 24a).

684

685 The author(s) should show that a careful search for the strains used in the original
686 description has been made and that none can be found. This is not restricted to the deposits
687 of the strain bearing the culture collection number mentioned in the valid publication, but
688 refers to any culture derived from the original culture of the strain. The author(s) should also
689 demonstrate that the proposed neotype agrees closely with the description given by the
690 original author(s).

691

692 The neotype becomes established (**established neotype**) two years after the date of its
693 publication in the IJSEM, provided that no objection has been referred within the first year
694 of the publication of the neotype to the Judicial Commission for consideration.

695

696 *Note.* The term “**strain**” refers to the culture or subcultures of it, described in the original
697 description. This is not restricted to the deposits of the strain bearing the culture collection
698 numbers mentioned in the valid publication, but refers to any culture derived from the
699 original culture of the strain.

700

701 Example: Roop *et al.* [10] proposed a neotype strain (strain VPI S-17 =ATCC 35980) for
702 *Campylobacter sputorum* (Prévot 1940) Véron and Chatelain 1973 (Approved Lists 1980)
703 because the type strain Forsyth ER33 was no longer extant. No objection has been referred
704 and the neotype strain of *Campylobacter sputorum* is the strain VPI S-17=ATCC 35980.

705

706 Rule 18d

707

708 A strain suggested as a neotype but not formally proposed in accordance with the
709 requirements of Rule 18c (suggested neotype) may not serve as a neotype until formally
710 proposed and established.

711

712 Rule 18e

713

714 If an original strain that should constitute the type of a species is discovered subsequent to
715 the formal proposal or establishment of a neotype for that species, the matter shall be
716 referred to the Judicial Commission.

717

718 Rule 18f

719

720 If a description or illustration constitutes, or a dead preserved specimen has been
721 designated the type of a species (Rule 18a(1)) and later a strain of this species is cultivated,
722 then the type strain may be designated by the person who isolated the strain or by a
723 subsequent author. This type strain shall then replace the description, illustration or
724 preserved specimen as the nomenclatural type. The designation of a type strain in this
725 manner must be published in the IJSEM, the authorship and date of priority of publication
726 being determined by the valid publication of the name by the original author(s) (Rule 24b).

727

728 Rule 18g *Change in characters of type and neotype strains*

729

730 If a type or neotype strain has become unsuitable, owing to changes in its characters or for
731 other reasons, then the matter should be referred to the Judicial Commission, which may
732 decide to take action leading to replacement of the strain.

733

734 Rule 19 *Reference strains*

735

736 A **reference strain** is a strain that is neither a type nor a neotype strain but a strain used in
737 comparative studies, e.g., taxonomic or serological, or for chemical assay.

738 A **reference strain** may, by subsequent action, be made a neotype, but otherwise has no
739 formal status under this *Code*.

740

741 ***Type of a Genus***

742

743 **Rule 20a**

744

745 The nomenclatural type (see Rule 15) of a genus or subgenus is the type species, i.e., the
746 single species or one of the species included when the name was originally validly published.

747 Only species whose names are validly published and legitimate may serve as types

748

749 **Rule 20b *Designation by original author(s)***

750

751 If the author(s) of the effective publication of a generic or subgeneric name designated a
752 type species, that species shall be accepted as the type species.

753

754 **Rule 20c *Genus with only one species***

755

756 If the genus, when its name is validly published, included only one species, then that species
757 is the type species irrespective of whether it is designated as the type.

758

759 **Rule 20d**

760

761 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 20d has been deleted. This rule remains here as a
762 placeholder in order to avoid renumbering Rules 20e and above. Rule 20d should not be
763 cited.

764

765 **Recommendation 20d**

766

767 *Editorial Note.* As the former Recommendation 20d has been deleted and remains here as a
768 placeholder, Recommendation 20d should not be cited.

769

770 **Rule 20e**

771

772 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 20e has been deleted. This rule only remains here only as a
773 placeholder, in order to avoid renumbering Rules 20f and above. Rule 20e should not be
774 cited.

775

776 **Rule 20f Retention of type species upon publication of a new generic name**

777

778 The valid publication of a new generic name as a deliberate substitute for an earlier one
779 does not change the type species of the genus.

780

781 Example: The deliberate creation of *Xanthomonas* as a substitute for the name *Phytomonas*
782 (not available, as it was already in use as the name of a protozoan genus), does not change
783 the type species, which was *Phytomonas campestris* and which became *Xanthomonas*
784 *campestris*.

785

786 **Type of a Subgenus**

787

788 **Rule 20g**

789

790 A genus and its type subgenus share the same type species.

791

792 Example: *Moraxella lacunata* is the type species of the genus *Moraxella* and of its type
793 subgenus, *Moraxella*.

794

795 **Type of a Taxon from Genus to Order (Tribe, Family, Suborder, and Order)**

796

797 **Rule 21a**

798

799 The nomenclatural type (see Rule 15) of a taxon above genus, up to and including order, is
800 the validly published and legitimate name of the included genus on which the name of the
801 relevant taxon is based. One taxon of each category must include the type genus. The names
802 of the taxa which include the type genus must be formed by the addition of the appropriate
803 suffix to the stem of the name of the type genus (see Rule 9).

804

805 Example: Order, *Pseudomonadales*; suborder, *Pseudomonadineae*; family,
806 *Pseudomonadaceae*; tribe, *Pseudomonadeae*; type genus, *Pseudomonas*.

807

808 **Rule 21b**

809

810 If the name of a family was not formed in conformity with Rule 21a but its name has been
811 conserved, then the type genus may be fixed by an Opinion of the Judicial Commission.

812

813 Example: The genus *Escherichia* is the type genus of the family *Enterobacteriaceae* (Opinion
814 15; Judicial Commission, 1958).

815

816 ***Type of a Taxon Higher than Order***

817

818 **Rule 22**

819

820 The type of a phylum is one of the contained genera. If there is only one genus, this becomes
821 the type. If there are two or more genera, the type shall be designated by the author(s) at
822 the time of the proposal of the phylum name, although authors are encouraged to respect
823 priority by considering which genus was described first.

824

825 The type (see Rule 15) of a class or subclass is one of the contained orders. If there is only
826 one order, this becomes the type. If there are two or more orders, the type shall be
827 designated by the author(s) at the time of the proposal of the name.

828

829 If not designated, the type of a taxon higher than order may be later designated by an
830 Opinion of the Judicial Commission.

831

832 **Section 5. Priority, Effective and Valid Publication of Names**

833

834 **Rule 23a**

835

836 Each taxon above and including species, up to and including order, with a given
837 circumscription, position, and rank can bear only one correct name, i.e., the earliest that is in
838 accordance with the Rules of this *Code*.

839

840 The name of a species is a binary combination of a generic name and specific epithet (see
841 Rule 12a). In a given **position**, a species can bear only one correct epithet, that is, the
842 earliest that is in accordance with the Rules of this *Code*.

843

844 Example: The species *Haemophilus pleuropneumoniae* bears this name in the genus
845 *Haemophilus*. When placed in the genus *Actinobacillus*, it bears the name *Actinobacillus*
846 *pleuropneumoniae*.

847

848 *Note 1.* In the case of a species, Rule 23a must be applied independently to the generic
849 name and the specific epithet. The specific epithet remains the same on transfer of a species
850 from one genus to another, except for necessary changes of the gender of adjectives used as
851 specific epithets, i.e., to comply with Rule 12c(1), unless the specific epithet has been
852 previously used in the name of another species or subspecies in the genus to which the
853 species is transferred (see Rule 41a).

854

855 *Note 2.* The name of a subspecies is a ternary combination of a generic name, a specific
856 epithet, and a subspecific epithet (see Rule 13c). In a given position, a subspecies can bear
857 only one correct subspecific epithet, i.e., the earliest that is in accordance with the Rules of
858 this *Code*. In the case of a subspecies, Rule 23a must be applied independently to the
859 specific and subspecific epithets. The subspecific epithet remains the same on transfer of a
860 subspecies from one species to another, except for necessary changes of the gender of
861 adjectives used as specific epithets, i.e., to comply with Rule 12c(1), unless the subspecific
862 epithet has been previously used in the name of another species or subspecies in the genus
863 to which the subspecies is to be transferred (see Rule 41a).

864

865 *Note 3.* The date from which all priorities were determined under the previous revisions of
866 the *Code* was 1 May 1753. After 1 January 1980, under Rule 24a, all priorities date from 1
867 January 1980 (see also Rule 24b).

868

869 *Note 4.* The Judicial Commission may make exceptions to Rule 23a by the addition of names
870 to the list of **conserved names** (*nomina conservanda*) or to the list of **rejected names**
871 (*nomina rejicienda*) (see Appendix 4). The Judicial Commission may correct the Approved
872 Lists (see Rule 24a).

873

874 (1) By **conserved name** (*nomen conservandum*) is meant a name which must be used instead
875 of all earlier **synonyms** and **homonyms**. By rejected name (*nomen rejiciendum*) is meant a
876 name which must not be used to designate any taxon. Only the Judicial Commission can
877 conserve or reject names (see also Rules 56a and 56b).

878

879 (2) **Opinions** on the conservation or rejection of names, issued by the Judicial Commission,
880 are published with other Opinions in the IJSEM. Opinions are numbered serially.

881

882 *Note 5.* Names may be: **validly published**— the name is included in an effective publication
883 and is accompanied by a description of the taxon or a reference to a description and certain
884 other requirements (see Rules 27–32); **legitimate**—validly published and in accordance with
885 the Rules; **illegitimate**—validly published and contrary to the Rules; **correct**— the name
886 which must be adopted for a taxon under the Rules.

887

888 **Rule 23b**

889

890 The date of a name or epithet is that of its valid publication. For purposes of priority, only
891 legitimate names and epithets are taken into consideration (see Rules 32b and 54).

892

893 **Rule 24a**

894 Valid publication of names (or epithets) that are governed by the Rules of this *Code* dates
895 from the dates of publication of the *Code*.

896

897 Priority of publication dates from 1 January 1980. On that date, all names published prior to
898 1 January 1980 and included in the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names are treated, for
899 nomenclatural purposes, as though they had been validly published for the first time on that
900 date, the existing types being retained (but see Rule 24b).

901

902 Priority of publication for names of *Cyanobacteria* validly published under the provisions of
903 the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants* (2018) is determined by
904 Article 13.1 of that *Code*.

905

906 *Note 1.* Names of prokaryotes in the various taxonomic ranks published until 31 December
907 1977 were assessed by the Judicial Commission, with the assistance of taxonomic experts.
908 Lists of names were prepared together with the names of the authors who originally
909 proposed the names. These *Approved Lists of Bacterial Names* were approved by the ICSB
910 and published in the IJSB on 1 January 1980. Names validly published between 1 January
911 1978 and 1 January 1980 were included in the *Approved Lists of Bacterial Names* (see
912 Appendix 2).

913

914 No further names will be added to the Approved Lists. Those names validly published prior
915 to 1 January 1980 but not included in the Approved Lists have no further standing in
916 nomenclature. They were not added to the lists of *nomina rejicienda* and are thus available
917 for reuse in the naming of new taxa. The reuse of a particular name cannot be
918 recommended if such reuse is likely to result in confusion due to previous or continuing use
919 of the name as a synonym, a strain designation, or for other reasons.

920

921 The *Approved Lists of Bacterial Names* contains for each name a reference to a description
922 that has appeared in an effective publication and the type, whenever possible. In the case of
923 species or subspecies, if a type strain is available, it is listed by its designation and the
924 culture collection(s) from which it may be obtained is indicated. If such a strain is not
925 available, a reference strain or reference material is indicated, if possible. Neotypes may be
926 proposed, in conformity with Rule 18c on such lists. (For citation of names on the *Approved*
927 *Lists*, see Rules 33b and 34a.)

928

929 *Note 2.* These Approved Lists may contain more than one name attached to the same type
930 (**homotypic synonyms**) since the names on the list represent names that were accepted in
931 prokaryotic nomenclature and taxonomy at the time of publication of the Approved Lists
932 and represented the views of microbiologists who held different taxonomic opinions.

933

934 *Note 3.* Synonyms may be **homotypic synonyms** (i.e., more than one name has been
935 associated with the same type) or **heterotypic synonyms** (i.e., different names have been
936 associated with different types that, in the opinion of the microbiologist concerned, belong
937 to the same taxon). The synonym first published is known as the **earlier synonym**, and
938 subsequently published synonyms are known as **later synonyms**.

939

940 *Note 4. Homotypic synonyms* were previously referred to as objective synonyms.
941 *Heterotypic synonyms* were previously referred to as subjective synonyms. **Earlier**
942 **synonyms** were previously referred to as senior synonyms. **Later synonyms** were previously
943 referred to as junior synonyms.

944

945 Publication of **homotypic synonyms** in the *Approved Lists* does not affect prokaryotic
946 nomenclature any more than does the valid publication of homotypic synonyms in currently
947 published prokaryotic taxonomic literature.

948

949 Examples: **Homotypic synonyms** – *Pseudomonas mallei* (Zopf 1885) Redfearn *et al.* 1966
950 (Approved Lists 1980) and *Burkholderia mallei* (Zopf 1885) Yabuuchi *et al.* 1993 are based on
951 the same type. **Heterotypic synonyms** – Kelly and Wood [11] regard *Thiobacillus*
952 *concretivorus* Parker 1945 as a heterotypic synonym of *Thiobacillus thiooxidans* Waksman
953 and Joffe 1922. These two species have different types.

954

955 **Rule 24b**

956

957 When the nomenclatural types of two or more taxa that are considered to be heterotypic
958 synonyms, priority of the names or epithets and consequently which are the correct names
959 or correct epithets are determined as follows (see also Rule 23a and 23b):

960

961 (1) If two or more names or epithets based on different nomenclatural types compete for
962 priority (i.e., the names or combinations are considered to be heterotypic synonyms) and if
963 all names or epithets were included on an Approved List, priority shall be determined by the
964 date of the name or epithet given on the Approved List (i.e., before 1 January 1980) unless
965 an earlier name or epithet is illegitimate (see Rule 23b). If two or more names or epithets
966 are of the same date, the author(s) who first unite(s) the taxa has the right to choose one of
967 them, and this choice must be followed.

968

969 (2) If two or more names or epithets are of the same date, the author who first unites the
970 taxa has the right to choose one of them, and this choice must be followed. If two or more
971 names or epithets based on different nomenclatural types compete for priority (i.e., the
972 names or combinations are considered to be heterotypic synonyms) and one or more names
973 or epithets appear on an Approved List while the others were otherwise validly published

974 after 1 January 1980, then priority is determined by the date of the name(s) or epithet(s) as
975 given on the Approved List (i.e., before 1 January 1980) and the date of valid publication of
976 the other name(s) or epithet(s) in the IJSB/IJSEM after 1 January 1980 unless an earlier name
977 or epithet is illegitimate (see Rule 23b). If two or more names or epithets are of the same
978 date, the author(s) who first unite(s) the taxa has the right to choose one of them, and this
979 choice must be followed.

980

981 (3) If two or more names or epithets based on different nomenclatural types that are validly
982 published between 1 January 1980 and 31 December 2020 (and therefore not included on
983 the Approved Lists, 1980, or the Corrigenda, 1984) and compete for priority (i.e., the names
984 or combinations are considered to be heterotypic synonyms), priority is determined by the
985 date of the valid publication (or announcement) of the name or epithet in the IJSB/IJSEM,
986 unless an earlier name or epithet is illegitimate (see Rule 23b).

987

988 (4) If two names or epithets appear in the same volume of the IJSB/IJSEM but in different
989 articles, priority is determined by page number or the order of article publication; a name or
990 epithet appearing on a lower page number or an article published earlier in the same issue is
991 deemed to have priority. If two or more names or epithets that appear in the same article
992 compete for priority (i.e., the names or combinations are considered to be heterotypic
993 synonyms) the author(s) who first unite(s) the taxa has the right to choose one of them, and
994 this choice must be followed. In order to implement Rule 24b (2) and 24b (3) in the fairest
995 manner, as of 1st January 1988 (Validation List no 24 onwards) names submitted for
996 inclusion in the Validation List will be allocated a number that reflects the date of receipt of
997 the validation request in the form that is accepted for publication. Where names that were
998 included in other printed or electronic publications as effective publications, are validly
999 published by announcement on the same Validation List in IJSEM, priority is established by
1000 the number allocated on the list. If two or more names or epithets on the same Validation
1001 List compete for priority (i.e., the names or combinations are considered to be heterotypic
1002 synonyms) and are attributed the same number (or no number was assigned) the author(s)
1003 who first unite(s) the taxa has the right to choose one of them, and this choice must be
1004 followed.

1005

1006 (5) If two names published after 1 January 2021 in different articles have the same
1007 publication date in the IJSEM, priority shall be determined by the date of acceptance for
1008 publication.

1009

1010 (6) If two names effectively published in other journals are validly published by
1011 announcement in the same Validation List in IJSEM, priority is established by the sequence
1012 number on the list.

1013

1014 *Note 1.* In order to implement Rule 24b(2) in the fairest manner, names submitted for
1015 inclusion in the Validation List will include a sequence number that reflects the date of
1016 receipt of the validation request in the form that is accepted for publication.

1017

1018 Example: Sly *et al.* [12] regard *Streptococcus caprinus* Brooker *et al.* 1996 as a heterotypic
1019 synonym of *Streptococcus gallolyticus* Osawa *et al.* 1996. *Streptococcus gallolyticus*
1020 (Validation List no. 56, priority number 2) having priority over *Streptococcus caprinus*
1021 (Validation List no. 56, priority number 7).

1022

1023 **Rule 24c**

1024

1025 The Judicial Commission may place on the list of **rejected names** (*nomina rejicienda*) a name
1026 previously published in an Approved List.

1027

1028 **Rule 25a Effective publication**

1029

1030 Effective publication is effected under this *Code* by making generally available, by sale or
1031 distribution to the scientific community, printed or electronic material for the purpose of
1032 providing a permanent record.

1033

1034 When a name of a new taxon is published in a work written in a language unfamiliar to the
1035 majority of workers in prokaryotic microbiology, it is recommended that the author(s)
1036 include in the publication a description in English.

1037

1038 *Note.* Electronic publication should follow the tradition of publication of printed matter
1039 acceptable to this *Code*.

1040

1041 **Rule 25b**

1042

1043 No other kind of publication than that cited in Rule 25a is accepted as effective, nor are the
1044 following:

1045 (1) Communication of new names at a meeting, in minutes of a meeting, or, after 1950, in
1046 abstracts of papers presented at meetings.

1047 (2) Placing of names on specimens in collections or in listings or catalogues of collections.

1048 (3) Distribution of microfilm, microcards, or matter reproduced by similar methods.

1049 (4) Reports in ephemeral publications, newsletters, newspapers after 1900, or non-scientific
1050 periodicals.

1051 (5) Inclusion of a name of a new taxon of prokaryote in a published patent application or
1052 issued patent.

1053 (6) Making available electronic material in advance of publication (e.g., papers in press, or
1054 otherwise making unpublished manuscripts available in electronic format).

1055

1056 **Rule 26a Date of publication**

1057

1058 The publication date of a scientific work is the date of publication of the printed or
1059 electronic matter. The date given to the work containing the name or epithet must be
1060 regarded as correct, in the absence of proof to the contrary.

1061

1062 **Rule 26b**

1063

1064 The date of acceptance of an article for publication, if given in a publication, does not
1065 indicate the effective date of publication and has no significance in the determination of the
1066 priority of publication of names.

1067

1068 ***Valid and Invalid Publication***

1069

1070 **Rule 27**

1071

1072 A name of a new taxon or a new combination for an existing taxon is not validly published
1073 unless the following criteria are met:

1074

1075 (1) The name or new combination must have appeared in an effective publication and the
1076 name must be published in the IJSB/IJSEM. For original articles appearing in the
1077 IJSB/IJSEM, this journal serves as the effective publication.

1078

1079 (2) The publication of the name or new combination in the IJSB/IJSEM is accompanied by a
1080 description of the taxon or by a reference to a description of the taxon that has
1081 appeared in an effective publication (see Rules 16, 25a and 25b and, for genus and
1082 species, Rules 29–32).

1083

1084 A formal description (“protologue”) must be included in the publication in the IJSEM or
1085 in the effectively published description of the taxon published elsewhere. This
1086 description must contain the following elements:

- 1087 a. The new name or new combination should be clearly stated and indicated as
1088 such (i.e. fam. nov., gen. nov., sp. nov., comb. nov., etc.).
- 1089 b. The derivation (etymology) of a new name (and, if necessary, of a new
1090 combination) must be given. As of 1 January 2023, for all new combinations,
1091 names considered to be homotypic or heterotypic synonyms, together with their
1092 authors and dates of valid publication, are to be listed and the basonym
1093 indicated.
- 1094 c. The properties of the taxon being described must be given directly after (a) and
1095 (b). This may include reference to tables or figures in the same publication, or
1096 reference to a previous effective publication.
- 1097 d. All information contained in (c) should be accessible.

1098

1099 (3) The type of the taxon must be designated (see Rules 15, 16, 18a, b, f, 20a-c, 21a and 22).
1100 In the case of species and subspecies, including new combinations, the type strains must be
1101 deposited according to Rule 30 and the accession identifiers stated.

1102

1103 *Note 1.* Valid publication of the name of a taxon requires publication in the IJSB/IJSEM of the
1104 name of the taxon and reference to a description in an effective publication, whether in the
1105 IJSB/IJSEM or in another publication. The date of valid publication is that of publication in
1106 the IJSB/IJSEM. The name may be mentioned in a previously published description, but the
1107 name is not validly published until its publication in the IJSB/IJSEM.

1108

1109 If the initial proposal of the new name or new combination is not published in the
1110 IJSB/IJSEM, valid publication (**announcement** in a **Validation List**) of the name in the
1111 IJSB/IJSEM is primarily the responsibility of the author(s) of the name or combination,
1112 together with the requirements of Rule 27(2) and (3) above. However, other individuals may
1113 also submit a new name or new combination for valid publication.

1114

1115 At the request of the Judicial Commission, the IJSB/IJSEM provides a Notification List that
1116 lists all nomenclatural changes as well as listing changes in taxonomic opinion that have
1117 occurred in an issue of the journal. After 1 January 2021, the Notification List will include a
1118 sequence number that provides the temporal order of publication of articles in an issue of
1119 the journal, in lieu of page number. This list has no formal status in prokaryotic
1120 nomenclature except to allow for orthographic and grammatical corrections to be made and
1121 to fairly establish priority of competing names with a sequence number in lieu of a page
1122 number.

1123

1124 In the case of a name of a new taxon, a type must be designated at the time of valid
1125 publication unless it can unambiguously be inferred (see Rule 16). In the case of a new
1126 combination for an existing taxon, the type must be stated. The type of a species or
1127 subspecies must be deposited in at least two publicly accessible culture collections in
1128 different countries from which subcultures must be available [see Rule 30 (3b)]. The
1129 description of the taxon should conform to minimal standards (see Recommendation 30).

1130

1131 *Note 2.* When a new species or a new combination results in the proposal of a new genus,
1132 both the genus name and the new species name or new combination must be validly
1133 published. Valid publication of the name of the new species or of the new combination
1134 alone does not constitute valid publication of the name of the new genus.

1135

1136 **Rule 28a**

1137

1138 Authors validly publishing a new name after 1 January 1980 may revive a name published
1139 prior to 1 January 1980 (see Rule 24a) but not listed in one of the Approved Lists of Bacterial
1140 Names unless the name is a *nomen rejiciendum*. The name may be used whether or not the
1141 new taxon is related in any way to the taxon to which the name was originally applied.

1142

1143 Authority for the name must be claimed by the new author(s). If the author(s) wish(es) to
1144 indicate that the name is a revived name and is used to describe a taxon with the same
1145 circumscription, position, and rank as that given by the original author(s), this may be done
1146 by appending the abbreviation “nom. rev.” (**revived name**) to the name (see Rule 33c). The
1147 proposal must contain a brief diagnosis, i.e., a statement or list of features that led the
1148 author(s) to conclude that the proposed taxon is sufficiently different from other recognized
1149 taxa to justify its revival. The data included in the statement may be taken from the earlier
1150 description and may include newer data. The description of the taxon and derivation of the
1151 name must conform to the requirements of Rule 27(2). The type must be designated [see
1152 Rule 27(3)].

1153

1154 *Note 1.* A new name which was previously published before 1 January 1980 is considered to
1155 be already validly published only if the name was included in the Approved Lists of Bacterial
1156 Names.

1157

1158 *Note 2.* Since revived names are treated as new names, they require valid publication, and
1159 the date of priority of a revived name is that of the publication in the IJSEM (see Rule 27).

1160

1161 *Note 3.* Searching for publication of names and descriptions included in effective
1162 publications prior to 1 January 1980 is no longer required. The Approved Lists of Bacterial
1163 Names form the foundation of a new prokaryotic nomenclature and taxonomy.

1164

1165 Rule 28b

1166

1167 A name or epithet is not validly published in the following circumstances:

1168

1169 (1) It was not accepted at the time of publication by the author(s) who published it.

1170

1171 Example: *Muellerina de Petschenko* 1910 (Opinion 10; Judicial Commission). Names or
1172 epithets published with a question mark or other indication of taxonomic doubt yet
1173 accepted by the author(s) are not validly published.

1174

1175 (2) It was merely proposed in anticipation of the future acceptance of the taxon concerned
1176 or the acceptance of a particular circumscription, position, or rank for the taxon that is being
1177 named or in anticipation of the future discovery of some hypothetical taxon.

1178

1179 Examples: (a) *Clostridium* Fischer 1895 (Opinion 20; Judicial Commission); (b)
1180 *Corynebacterium hemophilum* Svendsen *et al.* 1947. "Its haemophilic properties might be
1181 used in coining a name, and the name *Corynebacterium hemophilum* is suggested in case
1182 further investigation should justify its rank as a species".

1183

1184 (3) It was mentioned incidentally. **Incidental mention** of a new name means mention by an
1185 authors who does not clearly state or indicate that they are proposing a new name or
1186 combination.

1187

1188 Examples: (a) *Pseudobacterium* Trevisan 1888. (b) Raj [13] stated: "Also, recently another
1189 organism tentatively named as *Microcyclus marinus* was isolated from the ocean."

1190

1191 ***Valid Publication of the Name of a Genus or Subgenus, including a Monotypic Genus***

1192

1193 **Rule 29**

1194

1195 For a generic or subgeneric name to be validly published, it must comply with the following
1196 conditions:

1197 (1) It must be published in conformity with Rules 27 and 28b.

1198 (2) The valid publication of a genus or subgenus name must include one or more new
1199 names or combinations validly published, according to Rule 30.

1200 (3) A nomenclatural type must be selected at the time of valid publication from one of the
1201 species included in the genus or subgenus. In the case of a genus or subgenus containing
1202 a single species, that species serves as the type (see Rule 20c).

1203

1204 Instead of a new description of the genus or subgenus, a citation to a description or the
1205 properties of the genus or subgenus in a previous effective publication may be given. The
1206 same holds if genus is lowered in rank to a subgenus, or a subgenus elevated in rank to a
1207 genus.

1208

1209 In the case of a genus containing a single species, a combined generic and specific
1210 description may be given. In the case of a combined generic and specific description for a
1211 genus that contains a single species (see Rule 20c), the name of the new taxon is to be given
1212 (i.e., the genus name and the species epithet) indicating that it is both a novel genus and a
1213 novel species, gen. nov. sp. nov., followed by the etymology of the genus name and species
1214 epithet, in conformity with Rules 27 (2a) and (2b). The requirements of Rule 27 (2c),
1215 combining the information for the genus and species, are to be followed. At the time of valid
1216 publication, the nomenclatural type of the name at the rank of genus and the name at the
1217 rank of species must be given, in conformity with Rule 16 and 27 (3).

1218

1219 Example: *Propioniferax innocua* (Pitcher and Collins 1992) Yokota *et al.* 1994 or *Lamprocystis*
1220 *roseopersicina* (Kützing 1849) Schroeter 1886 (Approved Lists 1980).

1221

1222 **Recommendation 29**

1223

1224 A description of a genus or subgenus should mention the points in which the genus or
1225 subgenus differs from related genera or subgenera. Where possible, the family to which it
1226 belongs should be mentioned.

1227

1228 ***Valid Publication of the Name of a Species***

1229

1230 **Rule 30**

1231

1232 For the name of a species to be validly published, it must conform to the following
1233 conditions.

1234 (1) It must be published in conformity with Rules 27 and 28b.

1235 (2) It must be published as a binary combination consisting of a genus name followed by
1236 a single species epithet (see Rule 12a).

1237 (3) (a) Until 31 December 2000, before valid publication of the name of a new species, a
1238 nomenclatural type must be designated according to Rule 18a (1). If the species is
1239 cultivated, a culture of the type strain should be deposited in at least one publicly
1240 accessible culture collection from which subcultures must be available. The
1241 designations allotted to the strain by the culture collections should be quoted in the
1242 published description.

1243 (b) As of 1 January 2001, the valid publication of the name of a new species, or a
1244 new combination previously represented by a viable culture must include the
1245 designation of a type strain (see Rule 18a), and a viable culture of that strain must
1246 be deposited in at least two publicly accessible culture collections in different
1247 countries from which subcultures must be available.
1248 The designations allotted to the type strain by the culture collections are to be
1249 quoted at the time of valid publication. Evidence must be presented that the
1250 cultures are present, viable, and available (see Rule 30 (4)) at the time of publication
1251 in the IJSEM. This does not affect nomenclatural types designated until 31 December
1252 2000 under Rule 18a (1) and Rule 30 3(a).

1253

1254 *Note.* In exceptional cases, such as organisms requiring specialized facilities (e.g.,
1255 Risk Group/Biological Safety Level 3, high pressure requirements, etc.), exceptions
1256 may be made to this Rule. Exceptions will be considered on individual basis by a
1257 committee consisting of the Chair of the ICSP, the Chair of the Judicial Commission
1258 and the Editor-in-Chief of the IJSEM. Exceptions will be made known at the time of
1259 publication.

1260

1261 (4) Organisms deposited in such a fashion that access is restricted, such as safe deposits
1262 or strains deposited solely for current patent purposes, may not serve as type
1263 strains.

1264

1265 Names of taxa of *Cyanobacteria* validly published in conformity with the Rules of the
1266 *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants* are also validly published in
1267 conformity with the Rules of the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* (see
1268 General Consideration 5).

1269

1270 **Recommendation 30**

1271

1272 Before publication of the name and description of a new species, the examination and
1273 description should conform to the current **minimal standards** (if available) required for the
1274 relevant taxon of prokaryote.

1275

1276 *Note 1.* Lists of proposed **minimal standards** are prepared for prokaryotic taxa by experts for
1277 publication in the IJSEM (see Appendix 6). Such standards may include current tests for the
1278 establishment of generic identity and for the diagnosis of the species, i.e., an indication of
1279 characters which distinguish the species from others.

1280

1281 *Note 2.* The aim of proposed minimal standards is to provide guidance on the description of
1282 taxa for taxonomists seeking such advice. However, these standards are not to be applied in
1283 a way that contradicts Principle 1(4).

1284

1285 **Rule 31a**

1286

1287 The name of a species or a subspecies is not validly published if the description is
1288 demonstrably ambiguous and cannot be critically identified for purposes of the precise
1289 application of the name of a taxon.

1290

1291 Examples: (a) '*Methanobacillus omelianskii*' Bryant *et al.* 1967, whose description included
1292 all component species, was treated as a single species, and thus was illegitimate; (b)
1293 *Syntrophobacter wolinii* Boone and Bryant 1984 is legitimate, because the species
1294 description applies to one member of the syntrophic association with a hydrogen-producing
1295 organism.

1296

1297 **Rule 31b**

1298

1299 The name of a **consortium** is not regulated by this *Code*, and such a name is not validly
1300 published.

1301

1302 Example: *Cylindrogloea bacterifera* Perfiliev 1914.

1303

1304 *Note.* A **consortium** is an aggregate or association of two or more organisms.

1305

1306 ***Valid Publication of the Name of a Subspecies***

1307

1308 **Rule 32a**

1309

1310 For the name of a subspecies to be validly published, it must conform to the following
1311 conditions.

1312 (1) It must be published in conformity with Rules 27 and 28b.

1313 (2) It must be published as a **ternary combination** consisting of the generic name followed
1314 by a single specific epithet and this in turn by a single subspecific epithet, with the
1315 abbreviation “subsp.” between the two epithets to indicate the rank (see Rule 13a).

1316

1317 Example: *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis*.

1318

1319 (3) The author(s) must clearly indicate that a subspecies is being named.

1320

1321 **Recommendation 32a**

1322

1323 Recommendation 30 applies to the name of a subspecies with replacement of the word
1324 “species” by the word “subspecies”.

1325

1326 ***Publication of a Specific or Subspecific Epithet***

1327

1328 **Rule 32b**

1329

1330 A specific (or subspecific) epithet is not rendered illegitimate by publication of a species (or
1331 subspecies) name in which the generic name is illegitimate (see also Chapter 3, Section 8,
1332 and example for Rule 20f).

1333

1334 **Section 6. Citation of Authors and Names**

1335

1336 ***Proposal and Subsequent Citation of the Name of a New Taxon***

1337

1338 **Rule 33a**

1339

1340 The authors should indicate that a name is being proposed for a new taxon by the addition
1341 of the appropriate abbreviation for the category to which the taxon belongs.

1342

1343 *Note 1.* Appropriate abbreviations are: “**phyl. nov.**” for *phylum novum*, “**class. nov.**” for
1344 *classis nova*, “**ord. nov.**” for *ordo novus*, “**gen. nov.**” for *genus novum*, “**sp. nov.**” for *species*
1345 *nova*, “**comb. nov.**” for *combinatio nova*. Similar abbreviations may be formed as required.

1346

1347 *Note 2.* Although words or abbreviations in Latin are usually printed in italics, such
1348 abbreviations as the above are frequently printed in Roman or boldface type when they
1349 follow a Latin scientific name, in order to differentiate them from the name and draw
1350 attention to the abbreviation.

1351

1352 Examples: Order, *Actinomycetales* ord. nov.; family, *Actinomycetaceae* fam. nov.; genus,
1353 *Actinomyces* gen. nov.; species, *Actinomyces bovis* sp. nov.

1354

1355 **Rule 33b**

1356

1357 The citation of the name of a taxon that has been proposed previously should include both
1358 the name of the author(s) who first published the name and the year of publication. If there
1359 are more than two authors of the name, the citation includes only the first author followed
1360 by “*et al.*” and the year.

1361

1362 Examples: *Actinomyces bovis* Harz 1877 (Approved Lists 1980); *Acetobacterium woodii* Balch
1363 *et al.* 1977 (Approved Lists 1980).

1364

1365 *Note 1.* Correct citation of a name enables the date of publication to be verified, the original
1366 description to be found, and the use of the name by different authors for different
1367 organisms to be distinguished.

1368

1369 Example: *Mycobacterium terrae* Wayne 1966 (Approved Lists 1980), not *Mycobacterium*
1370 *terrae* Tsukamura 1966.

1371

1372 *Note 2.* Full citation of the publication should include reference to the page number(s) in the
1373 main text of the scientific work in which the name was proposed, not to the summary or
1374 abstract of that text, even if the proposal of the name is mentioned in that summary or
1375 abstract.

1376

1377 Example: *Bacillus subtilis* (Ehrenberg 1835) Cohn 1872, 174. The page number “174” is the
1378 page in Cohn’s publication [14] on which the proposal of the new combination occurs.

1379

1380 Example for a name published in the IJSEM after 1 January 2021: *Escherichia ruysiae* van der
1381 Putten *et al.* 2021, 004609, 6. The page number ‘6’ is the page in article number 004609 on
1382 which the proposal of the new name occurs.

1383

1384 *Note 3.*

1385

1386 (1) The citation of a name that is included in an Approved List can include the name of the
1387 original author(s) and date of publication, followed by the words “Approved Lists” in
1388 parentheses.

1389

1390 Example: *Bacillus cereus* Frankland and Frankland 1887 (Approved Lists 1980); *Bacillus*
1391 *subtilis* (Ehrenberg 1835) Cohn 1872 (Approved Lists 1980).

1392

1393 (2) Alternatively, a name that is included in an Approved List may be cited simply by the
1394 addition of the words “Approved Lists 1980”, in parentheses.

1395

1396 Examples: *Bacillus cereus* (Approved Lists 1980); *Bacillus subtilis* (Approved Lists 1980).

1397

1398 (3) If indication is given that a name is included in an Approved List without specification of
1399 that list, the abbreviation “**nom. approb.**” (*nomen approbatum*) may be appended to the
1400 name of the taxon.

1401

1402 Example: *Bacillus subtilis* nom. approb.

1403

1404 **Rule 33c**

1405

1406 If a name or epithet that was published prior to 1 January 1980 but not included in an
1407 Approved List is proposed for a different or for the same taxon, the name or epithet must be
1408 attributed to the author(s) of the proposal (Rule 28a), and the citation should be made
1409 according to Rules 33a, 33b, 34a and 34b.

1410

1411 *Note 1.* If a name or epithet is revived for the same taxon, the author(s) may indicate the
1412 fact by addition of the abbreviation “**nom. rev.**” (*nomen revictum*) after the correct
1413 abbreviation (Rule 33a) for the category concerned.

1414

1415 Example: *Actinobacillus seminis* sp. nov., nom. rev., or *Leptothrix discophora* sp. nov., nom.
1416 rev.

1417

1418 *Note 2.* If an author wishes to indicate the names of the original authors of a revived name,
1419 the author may do so by citation of the name of the taxon, followed by the word “**ex**” and
1420 the name of the original author(s) and the year of publication, in parentheses, followed by
1421 the abbreviation “nom. rev.”

1422

1423 Example: Palleroni and Holmes (1981) proposed to revive *Pseudomonas cepacia* Burkholder
1424 1950. An author who subsequently referred to this revived name should use the citation
1425 *Pseudomonas cepacia* (ex Burkholder 1950) Palleroni and Holmes 1981. If the name is
1426 subsequently revised, its origins should be perpetuated by the inclusion of the original
1427 citation in the form *Burkholderia cepacia* (Palleroni and Holmes 1981 ex Burkholder 1950)
1428 Yabuuchi *et al.* 1993.

1429

1430 *Note 3.* If an author wishes to indicate that a reused name has been used for a different
1431 taxon, indication is made by citation of the name and the author and year of publication
1432 followed by the word “**non**” (or “not”) and the name and year of the publication of the
1433 author(s) who first used the name.

1434

1435 Example: *Achromobacter* Yabuuchi and Yano 1981 *non Achromobacter* Bergey *et al.* 1923.

1436

1437 **Rule 33d**

1438

1439 If a name is revived under Rule 33c it may be revived in a new combination; that is, the
1440 revived species may be transferred to another genus, or the revived subspecies may be
1441 transferred to another species, at the time the name is revived. It is not necessary first to
1442 revive the name in the original combination.

1443

1444 Example: '*Actinobacterium meyeri*' has been revived by Cato *et al.* [15] as a species of the
 1445 genus *Actinomyces* as *Actinomyces meyeri* (*ex* Prévot 1938) Cato *et al.* 1984 nom. rev.,
 1446 comb. nov. Subsequent authors can cite it as *Actinomyces meyeri* (*ex* Prévot 1938) Cato *et al.*
 1447 1984.

1448

1449 ***Proposal and Subsequent Citation of a New Combination***

1450

1451 **Rule 34a**

1452

1453 When authors transfer a species to another genus (Rule 41), or a subspecies to another
 1454 species, the author(s) who make(s) the transfer should indicate the formation of the **new**
 1455 **combination** by the addition to the citation of the abbreviation "**comb. nov.**" (*combinatio*
 1456 *nova*).

1457

1458 This form of citation should be used when authors retain the original species epithet or
 1459 subspecies epithet in a new combination; however, if authors are obliged to substitute a
 1460 new species epithet or subspecies epithet as a result of homonymy, the abbreviation "**nom.**
 1461 **nov.**" (*nomen novum*) should be used [see Rule 41a(1)]. The original name is referred to as
 1462 the **basonym**.

1463

1464 Example: *Anaerovibrio glycerini* Schauder and Schink 1996; *Anaerosinus glycerini* (Schauder
 1465 and Schink 1996) Strömpl *et al.* 1999.

1466

1467 *Note 1.* If an author transfers a species which has been included in the Approved Lists to
 1468 another genus, the proposal of the **new combination** should be made by the addition of the
 1469 abbreviation "**comb. nov.**" (*combinatio nova*), followed by the name in parentheses under
 1470 which it appeared in the Approved Lists.

1471

1472 Example: The species *Pseudomonas saccharophila* Doudoroff 1940 appeared on the
 1473 Approved Lists and was transferred by Xie and Yokota [16] to the genus *Pelomonas*, then the
 1474 proposal by Xie and Yokota would be as follows: *Pelomonas saccharophila* (Doudoroff 1940)
 1475 comb. nov. Basonym: *Pseudomonas saccharophila* (Approved Lists 1980). Another author
 1476 citing this proposal would then use the citation *Pelomonas saccharophila* (Doudoroff 1940)
 1477 Xie and Yokota 2005 comb. nov. (*Pseudomonas saccharophila* Approved Lists 1980).

1478

1479 **Rule 34b**

1480

1481 The citation of a **new combination** which has been previously proposed should include the
1482 name of the original author, in parentheses, followed by the name of the author(s) who
1483 proposed the new combination and the year of publication of the new combination.

1484

1485 Example: *Microbacterium oxydans* (Chatelain and Second) Schumann *et al.* 1999 or
1486 *Microbacterium oxydans* (Chatelain and Second 1966) Schumann *et al.* 1999.

1487

1488 *Note 1.* The inclusion of the date of the publication of the original author(s) of the name is to
1489 be preferred, although it is sometimes omitted, since the date can be expected to be found
1490 in the publication of the author(s) who proposed the new combination.

1491

1492 Example: *Microbacterium oxydans* (Chatelain and Second 1966) Schumann *et al.* 1999 is to
1493 be preferred to *Microbacterium oxydans* (Chatelain and Second) Schumann *et al.* 1999.

1494

1495 *Note 2.* When, however, the authors who form a new combination are obliged to substitute
1496 a new specific epithet to avoid homonymy [see Rule 41a(1)], the name(s) of the author(s) of
1497 the original specific epithet is(are) omitted.

1498

1499 Example: *Flavobacterium hydatidis* Bernardet *et al.* 1996 is correct, **not** *Flavobacterium*
1500 *hydatidis* (Strohl and Tait 1978) Bernardet *et al.* 1996 [see Example to Rule 41a(1) for an
1501 explanation].

1502

1503 **Rule 34c**

1504

1505 When a taxon from subspecies to genus is altered in rank but retains its name or epithet, the
1506 original author(s) must be cited, in parentheses, followed by the name of the author(s) who
1507 effected the alteration and the year of publication.

1508

1509 Example: *Bifidobacterium globosum* (ex Scardovi *et al.* 1969) Biavati *et al.* 1982 to
1510 *Bifidobacterium pseudolongum* subsp. *globosum* (Biavati *et al.* 1982) Yaeshima *et al.* 1992.

1511

1512 ***Citation of the Name of a Taxon in which Circumscription Has Been Emended***

1513

1514 **Rule 35**

1515

1516 If an alteration of the diagnostic characters or of the circumscription of a taxon modifies the
 1517 nature of the taxon, the author(s) responsible may be indicated by the addition to the
 1518 author citation of the abbreviation “**emend.**” (*emendavit*) followed by the name of the
 1519 author(s) responsible for the change.

1520

1521 Example: *Rhodopseudomonas* Czurda and Maresch 1937 emend. van Niel 1944 (see Opinion
 1522 49; Judicial Commission).

1523

1524 ***Citation of a Name Conserved so as to Exclude the Type***

1525

1526 **Rule 36**

1527

1528 A name conserved so as to exclude the type is not to be ascribed to the original author(s),
 1529 but the author(s) whose concept of the name is conserved must be cited as authority.

1530

1531 Example: The original type species of the genus *Aeromonas* was rejected as a *nomen*
 1532 *dubium*. (Opinion 48; Judicial Commission). The generic name *Aeromonas* is now attributed
 1533 to Stanier 1943, not to Kluver and van Niel 1936, and with a new type species, *A.*
 1534 *hydrophila*.

1535

1536 **Section 7. Changes in Names of Taxa as a Result of Transference, Union, or Change in Rank**

1537

1538 **Rule 37a**

1539

1540 (1) The name of a taxon must be changed if the nomenclatural type of the taxon is excluded.

1541

1542 Example: On transferring the type species of the genus *Micropolyspora* Lechevalier *et al.*
 1543 1961, *Micropolyspora brevicatena* Lechevalier *et al.* 1961 to the genus *Nocardia*, Goodfellow
 1544 and Pirouz [17] did not provide a solution for the taxonomic position of *Micropolyspora*
 1545 *angiospora* Zhukova *et al.* 1968, *Micropolyspora faeni* Cross *et al.* 1968, *Micropolyspora*

1546 *internatus* Agre *et al.* 1974 and *Micropolyspora rectivirgula* (Krasil'nikov and Agre 1964)
1547 Prauser and Momirova 1970, which they should have removed from the genus
1548 *Micropolyspora*.

1549

1550 (2) Retention of a name in a sense that excludes the type can only be effected by
1551 conservation and only by the Judicial Commission (see also Rule 23a). At the time of
1552 conservation, the new type is established by the Judicial Commission.

1553

1554 **Rule 37b**

1555

1556 A change in the name of a taxon is not warranted by an alteration of the diagnostic
1557 characters or of the circumscription. A change in a name may be required by one of the
1558 following.

1559 (1) An Opinion of the Judicial Commission [see Rule 37a(2) above].

1560 (2) Transfer of the taxon (see Rule 41).

1561 (3) Union with another taxon (Rules 42–44, 47a, and 47b).

1562 (4) Change of rank (Rules 48, 49, 50a, 50b).

1563

1564 **Rule 38**

1565

1566 When two or more taxa of the same rank are united, the name of the taxon under which
1567 they are united (and, therefore, the type of the taxon) is chosen by the rule of priority of
1568 publication.

1569

1570 Example: White [18] united *Eberthella* Bergey *et al.* 1923 [19] with *Salmonella* Lignières 1900
1571 and retained the earlier name, *Salmonella*.

1572

1573 *Note.* *Eberthella* was raised by Bergey *et al.* [19] to a genus from the subgeneric name,
1574 *Eberthella* Buchanan 1918. If, however, this choice would lead to confusion in prokaryotic
1575 nomenclature, the author(s) should refer this matter to the Judicial Commission. (For taxa
1576 above the rank of species, see also Rule 47a).

1577

1578 Example: Not yet found.

1579

1580 ***Division of a Genus into Multiple Genera or Subgenera, and of a Subgenus into Subgenera***

1581

1582 **Rule 39a**

1583

1584 If a genus is divided into two or more genera or subgenera, the generic name must be
1585 retained for one of these. If the name has not been retained (in a previous publication), it
1586 must be re-established under Rule 39b. (See Rule 49 when a subgenus is raised to genus).

1587

1588 Example: Ash *et al.* [9] proposed that the genus *Bacillus* be divided into the genera *Bacillus*
1589 and *Paenibacillus*, and the genus which contained the type species *Bacillus subtilis* must be
1590 named *Bacillus*.

1591

1592 **Rule 39b**

1593

1594 When a particular species has been designated as the type, the generic name must be
1595 retained for the genus which includes that species.

1596

1597 **Rule 39c**

1598

1599 The provisions of Rules 39a and 39b apply when a subgenus is divided into two or more
1600 subgenera, the original subgeneric name being retained for that subgenus which contains
1601 the type species.

1602

1603 ***Division of a Species into Multiple Species or Subspecies, and of a Subspecies into Multiple***

1604 ***Subspecies***

1605

1606 **Rule 40a**

1607

1608 When a species is divided into two or more species or subspecies, the specific epithet of the
1609 original species must be retained for one of the taxa into which the species is divided or, if
1610 the epithet has not been retained (in a previous publication), it must be re-established. (See
1611 Rule 50a when a subspecies is elevated to a species).

1612

1613 **Rule 40b**

1614

1615 The specific epithet must be retained for the species or subspecies which includes the type
1616 strain. When no type was designated, one must be designated.

1617

1618 Example: If the species *Bacillus subtilis* is divided into subspecies, the subspecies containing
1619 the type strain must be named *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis*.

1620

1621 **Rule 40c**

1622

1623 The provisions of Rules 40a and 40b apply when a subspecies is divided into two or more
1624 subspecies, the original subspecies name being retained for that subspecies which contains
1625 the type strain.

1626

1627 *Note.* Although the specific and subspecific epithets in the name of a type subspecies are the
1628 same, they do not contravene Rule 12b because they are based on the same type.

1629

1630 **Rule 40d**

1631

1632 The valid publication of a subspecific name that does not include the type of the species,
1633 automatically creates the subspecies that includes the nomenclatural type of the species and
1634 whose name bears specific and subspecific epithets that are identical to the epithet of the
1635 name of the species, unless this subspecies is explicitly proposed in the same effective
1636 publication.

1637

1638 Example: Publication of *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *spizizenii* Nakamura *et al.* 1999 automatically
1639 created a new subspecies *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis*.

1640

1641 The author(s) of the species name must be cited as the author(s) of such an automatically
1642 created subspecific name.

1643

1644 Example: *Vibrio subtilis* Ehrenberg to *Bacillus subtilis* Cohn 1872 comb. nov. to *Bacillus*
1645 *subtilis* subsp. *subtilis* Nakamura *et al.* 1999 subsp. nov. The correct authorship of the
1646 subspecies is *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis* (Ehrenberg 1835) Nakamura *et al.* 1999

1647 [Ehrenberg for the epithet and Nakamura for the new subspecies].

1648

1649 The authority of the species name must be cited as the authority, in parentheses, of the
1650 name of a subspecies that bears specific and subspecific epithets that are identical to the
1651 epithet of the name of the species.

1652

1653 *Note 1.* A consequence of the valid publication of a subspecific name that does not include
1654 the type of the species is that another subspecies that includes the type and whose name
1655 bears the same specific and subspecific epithets as the name of the type must be validly
1656 published. Valid publication of the name at the rank of subspecies, which is based on the
1657 same type as that of the species and bears the same specific and subspecific epithets, must
1658 conform to Rules 27, 28b, 32a and 32b.

1659

1660 Example: A consequence of the publication of *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *spizizenii* Nakamura *et*
1661 *al.* 1999 is that the name of a new subspecies *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis* must be validly
1662 published by the same authors that published the species name. This means that Nakamura
1663 *et al.* 1999 are automatically the authors of the name *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis*
1664 (Ehrenberg 1835) Nakamura *et al.* 1999.

1665

1666 *Note 2.* If names at the rank of subspecies that include the nomenclatural type of the species
1667 and whose name bears specific and subspecific epithets that are identical to the epithet of
1668 the name of the species, were not validly published as specified under Rule 40d Note 1, they
1669 may by action of the Judicial Commission be ruled to have been validly published as defined
1670 in Rule 46 of the 1975 and 1990 revisions of the *International Code of Nomenclature of*
1671 *Bacteria* and their authorships and dates of valid publication fixed accordingly.

1672

1673 ***Transfer of a Species to Another Genus***

1674

1675 **Rule 41a**

1676

1677 When a species is transferred to another genus without any change of rank, the specific
1678 epithet must be retained, except for necessary changes of gender of adjectives used as
1679 specific epithets, to comply with Rule 12c(1), or it must be re-established if it has not been
1680 retained (in a previous publication), unless (see Rule 23a Note 1):

1681

1682 (1) The resulting binary combination would be a **later homonym**.

1683

1684 Example: Bernardet *et al.* [20] proposed *Flavobacterium hydatis* for *Cytophaga aquatilis*

1685 Strohl and Tait 1978 (Approved Lists 1980) on transfer to *Flavobacterium* because the name

1686 *Flavobacterium aquatile* already existed in that genus.

1687

1688 (2) There is available an earlier validly published and legitimate specific or subspecific

1689 epithet.

1690

1691 Example: Not yet found.

1692

1693 **Rule 41b**

1694

1695 If the name of a genus is changed, the specific epithets of the species included under the

1696 original generic name must be retained for the same species, when they are transferred to

1697 the new genus, except for necessary changes of gender of adjectives used as specific

1698 epithets, to comply with Rule 12c(1).

1699

1700 ***Union of Taxa of Equal Rank***

1701

1702 **Rule 42**

1703

1704 In the case of subspecies, species, subgenera, and genera, if two or more of those taxa of the

1705 same rank are united, the oldest legitimate name or epithet is retained.

1706

1707 If the names or epithets are of the same date, the author or group of authors who first

1708 unites the taxa has the right to choose one of them, and that choice must be followed.

1709

1710 **Recommendation 42**

1711

1712 Authors who must choose between two generic names of the same date should note the

1713 following:

1714 (1) Designate the name that is better known.

1715 (2) Designate the name that was first accompanied by the description of a species.

1716 (3) If both are accompanied by descriptions of species, designate the name that includes the
1717 larger number of species.

1718 (4) In cases of equality with respect to these considerations, designate the more appropriate
1719 name.

1720

1721 ***Union of Genera as Subgenera***

1722

1723 **Rule 43**

1724

1725 When several genera are united as subgenera of one genus, the subgenus that includes the
1726 type species of the genus under which union takes place must bear the same name as that
1727 genus.

1728

1729 Example: The subgenus name *Lactobacillus* Beijerinck 1901 must be used instead of
1730 *Thermobacterium* for the subgenus that contains the type species *Lactobacillus delbrueckii*
1731 (see *Bergey's Manual*, 7th edn, p. 543 [21], and Opinion 38 of the Judicial Commission).

1732

1733 ***Union of Species of Two or More Genera as a Single Genus***

1734

1735 **Rule 44**

1736

1737 If two or more species of different genera are brought together to form a genus and if these
1738 species include the type species of one or more genera, the name of the genus is that
1739 associated with the type species having the earliest legitimate generic name.

1740

1741 If no type species is placed in the genus, a new generic name must be proposed and a type
1742 species designated.

1743

1744 Example: *Brevibacterium* Breed 1953. None of the included species was a type species of the
1745 genera from which the species were transferred, so a new name, *Brevibacterium*, was
1746 proposed, with *Brevibacterium linens* as the type species.

1747

1748 ***Union of Species as Subspecies***

1749

1750 **Rule 45**

1751

1752 When several species are united as subspecies under one species, the subspecies that
1753 includes the type strain of the species under which they are united must be designated by
1754 the same epithet as the species.

1755

1756 Example: *Streptomyces griseus* subsp. *griseus* (see pp. 214 and 224 in Pridham *et al.* [22]).

1757

1758 **Rule 46**

1759

1760 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 46 has been relocated as Rule 40d. This rule remains here
1761 only as a placeholder in order to avoid renumbering Rules 47 and above. Rule 46 should not
1762 be cited.

1763

1764 ***Union of Taxa above Species under a Higher Taxon***

1765

1766 **Rule 47a**

1767 *Editorial Note.* The former Rule 47a has been deleted. This rule remains here only as a
1768 placeholder in order to avoid renumbering Rule 47b. Rule 47a should not be cited.

1769

1770 **Recommendation 47a**

1771

1772 When two or more taxa of the same rank from tribe through family, are united under a new
1773 taxon of higher rank for which there is no previous validly published name, consideration
1774 should be given to selecting the earliest legitimate genus name that is the nomenclatural
1775 type of one of the lower-ranking taxa to be the nomenclatural type of the higher-ranking
1776 taxon that also derives its name from the name of that genus.

1777

1778 Example: Buchanan in the publication by Breed *et al.* (1957) [23] placed the families
1779 *Beggiatoaceae* Migula 1894 and *Vitreoscillaceae* Pringsheim 1949 in the new order
1780 *Beggiatoales*, whose type is *Beggiatoa* Trevisan 1842, which has priority over was validly
1781 published before *Vitreoscilla* Pringsheim 1949 and was included in the family. In contrast,
1782 Breed *et al.* (1957) [19] chose *Pseudomonas* Migula 1894 instead of *Spirillum* Ehrenberg

1783 1832 and *Nitrobacter* Winogradsky 1892 to form the name of a new suborder:

1784 *Pseudomonadineae* Breed *et al.* 1957.

1785

1786 **Rule 47b**

1787

1788 If no type genera were placed in the taxon, a new name based on the selected type must be
1789 proposed for the taxon.

1790

1791 Example: *Peptococcaceae* Rogosa 1971 (see p. 235 in Rogosa [24]).

1792

1793 ***Change in Rank***

1794

1795 **Rule 48**

1796

1797 When the rank of a taxon between subgenus and order is changed, the stem of the name
1798 must be retained and only the suffix altered unless the resulting name must be rejected
1799 under the Rules (see Rule 9).

1800

1801 Example: Elevation of the tribe *Pseudomonadeae* to the family *Pseudomonadaceae*.

1802

1803 **Rule 49**

1804

1805 When a genus is lowered in rank to subgenus, the original name must be retained unless it is
1806 rejected under the Rules. This also applies when a subgenus is elevated to a genus.

1807

1808 Example: Bøvre [25] lowered the genus *Branhamella* Catlin 1970 in rank to subgenus, the
1809 name of the subgenus is *Branhamella* (Catlin 1970) Bøvre 1979.

1810

1811 **Rule 50a**

1812

1813 If a subspecies is elevated in rank to a species, the subspecific epithet in the name of the
1814 subspecies must become the specific epithet of the name of the species unless the resulting
1815 combination is illegitimate.

1816

1817 Example: *Campylobacter pylori* subsp. *mustelae* Fox *et al.* 1988 becomes *Campylobacter*
1818 *mustelae* (Fox *et al.* 1988) Fox *et al.* 1989.

1819

1820 **Rule 50b**

1821

1822 If a species is lowered in rank to a subspecies, the specific epithet in the name of the species
1823 must be used as the subspecific epithet of the name of the subspecies, unless the resulting
1824 combination is illegitimate.

1825

1826 Example: *Bifidobacterium globosum* (ex Scardovi *et al.* 1969) Biavati *et al.* 1982 becomes
1827 *Bifidobacterium pseudolongum* subsp. *globosum* (Biavati *et al.* 1982) Yaeshima *et al.* 1992.

1828

1829 **Section 8. Illegitimate Names and Epithets: Replacement, Rejection, and Conservation of**
1830 **Names and Epithets**

1831

1832 ***Illegitimate Names***

1833

1834 **Rule 51a**

1835

1836 A name contrary to a Rule is illegitimate and may not be used. However, a name of a taxon
1837 that is illegitimate when the taxon is in one taxonomic position is not necessarily illegitimate
1838 when the taxon is in another taxonomic position.

1839

1840 Example: If the genus *Diplococcus* Weichselbaum 1886 is combined with the genus
1841 *Streptococcus* Rosenbach 1884, *Diplococcus* is illegitimate as the name of the combined
1842 genus because it is not the earlier name. If the genus *Diplococcus* Weichselbaum 1886 is
1843 accepted as separate and distinct, then the name *Diplococcus* is legitimate.

1844

1845 **Rule 51b**

1846

1847 Among the reasons for which a name may be illegitimate are the following:

1848

1849 (1) If the taxon to which the name was applied, as circumscribed by the author(s), included
1850 the nomenclatural type of a name that the author(s) ought to have adopted under one or
1851 more of the Rules.

1852

1853 Example: If an author circumscribes a genus to include *Bacillus subtilis*, the type species of
1854 the genus *Bacillus*, then the circumscribed genus must be named *Bacillus*.

1855

1856 (2) If the author(s) did not adopt for a binary or ternary combination the earliest legitimate
1857 generic name, specific epithet, or subspecific epithet available for the taxon with its
1858 particular **circumscription, position, and rank**.

1859

1860 Example: The name *Bacillus whitmori* Stanton and Fletcher 1921 was illegitimate as
1861 Whitmore had named the organism *Bacillus pseudomallei* in 1913 [26].

1862

1863 (3) If the specific epithet must be rejected under Rules 52 or 53.

1864

1865 (4) If a new name or combination validly published before 31 December 2000 is a **later**
1866 **homonym** of a name of a taxon of prokaryotes, fungi, algae, protozoa or viruses.

1867

1868 Example: *Phytomonas* Donovan 1909, a genus of flagellates, antedates *Phytomonas* Bergey
1869 *et al.* 1923, a genus of prokaryote (Opinion 14; Judicial Commission).

1870

1871 (5) If a new name or combination validly published on or after 1 January 2001 is a later
1872 **homonym** of a validly published name of a taxon of prokaryotes or a name or combination
1873 validly published or available under the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi,*
1874 *and plants* or the *International Code of Zoological Nomenclature*. This does not affect validly
1875 published names or combinations not treated as later homonyms prior to 1 January 2001.

1876

1877 ***Illegitimate Epithets***

1878

1879 **Rule 52**

1880

1881 The following are not to be regarded as specific or subspecific epithets:

1882

1883 (1) A word or phrase that is not intended as a specific epithet.

1884

1885 Example: *Bacillus nova species* Matzuschita.

1886

1887 (2) A word that is an ordinal adjective higher than ten used for enumeration.

1888

1889 Example: *undecimus, duodecimus* etc.

1890

1891 (3) A number or letter.

1892

1893 Example: α in *Bacillus α* von Freudenreich.

1894

1895 **Rule 53**

1896

1897 An epithet is illegitimate if it duplicates a specific or subspecific epithet previously validly
1898 published for a species or subspecies of the same genus and if this species or subspecies is a
1899 different bacterium with a name based upon another type.

1900

1901 Example: *Bacillus pallidus* Scholz *et al.* 1988 is based on the nomenclatural type, strain H12;
1902 the specific epithet *pallidus* cannot be used for *Bacillus pallidus* Zhou *et al.* 2008, which is a
1903 different bacterium with a name based upon another type.

1904

1905 ***Replacement of Names***

1906

1907 **Rule 54**

1908

1909 A name or epithet illegitimate according to Rules 51b, 53 or 56a is replaced by the oldest
1910 legitimate name or epithet in a **binary** or **ternary combination** that in the new position will
1911 be in accordance with the Rules.

1912

1913 If no legitimate name or epithet exists, one must be designated. A specific epithet is not
1914 rendered illegitimate by publication of a species name in which the generic name is
1915 illegitimate (Rule 32b). Authors may use such an epithet, provided that there is no obstacle
1916 to its employment in the new position or sense; the resultant combination is treated as a

1917 new name and is to be ascribed to the author(s) of the combination. However, the epithet is
1918 ascribed to the original author(s).

1919

1920 Example: *Pfeifferella pseudomallei* (Whitmore 1913) Ford 1928 is an illegitimate
1921 combination since *Pfeifferella* is a homonym of a protozoan generic name (Opinion 14;
1922 Judicial Commission [32]). The epithet *pseudomallei* can be used for this organism in another
1923 genus, *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* (Whitmore 1913) Haynes 1957.

1924

1925 **Rule 55**

1926

1927 A validly published name or epithet may not be replaced merely because of the following:

1928

1929 (1) It is inappropriate.

1930

1931 Example: *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* does not produce melanin (see Schwabacher *et al.*
1932 [27]).

1933

1934 (2) It is disagreeable.

1935

1936 (3) Another name is preferable.

1937

1938 (4) Another name is better known.

1939

1940 Example: *Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum* cannot be rejected because the synonym
1941 *Corynebacterium hofmannii* is better known.

1942

1943 (5) It no longer describes the organism.

1944

1945 Example: *Haemophilus influenzae* (does not cause influenza).

1946

1947 (6) It has been cited incorrectly; an incorrect citation can be rectified by a later author.

1948

1949 Example: *Proteus morgani* Yale 1939 (see Lessel [28]).

1950

1951 **Rejection of Names**

1952

1953 **Rule 56a**

1954 Only the Judicial Commission can place names on the list of **rejected names** (*nomina*
1955 *rejicienda*) (see Rule 23a, Note 4, and Appendix 4). A name may be placed on this list for
1956 various reasons, including the following:

1957

1958 (1) An **ambiguous name** (*nomen ambiguum*), i.e., a name which has been used with
1959 different meanings and, thus, has become a source of error.

1960

1961 Example: *Aerobacter* Beijerinck 1900 (Opinion 46; Judicial Commission).

1962

1963 (2) A **doubtful name** (*nomen dubium*), i.e., a name whose application is uncertain.

1964

1965 Example: *Leuconostoc citrovorum* (Opinion 45; Judicial Commission).

1966

1967 (3) A **name causing confusion** (*nomen confusum*), i.e., a name based upon a mixed culture.

1968

1969 Example: *Malleomyces* Hallier 1870.

1970

1971 (4) A **perplexing name** (*nomen perplexum*), a name whose application is known but causes
1972 uncertainty in prokaryotic nomenclature (see Rule 57c).

1973

1974 Example: *Bacillus limnophilus* Bredemann and Stürck in Stürck 1935 (Greek–Greek, marsh
1975 loving) and *Bacillus limophilus* Migula 1900 (Latin–Greek, mud loving); see *Index Bergeyana*,
1976 p. 196 [29].

1977

1978 (5) A **perilous name** (*nomen periculosum*), i.e., a name that the application is likely to lead to
1979 accidents endangering health or life or of serious economic consequences.

1980

1981 Example: *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* subsp. *pestis* (Opinion 60; Judicial Commission) is to be
1982 rejected as a *nomen periculosum*.

1983

1984 *Note 1.* This application is restricted to a proposed change in the specific epithet of a species
1985 that is widely recognized as contagious, virulent, or highly toxigenic, for example, to that of a
1986 subspecies of a species having a different host range or a degree of contagiousness or
1987 virulence. If the Judicial Commission recognizes a high order of risk to health, or of serious
1988 economic consequences, an Opinion may be issued that the taxon be maintained as a
1989 separate species, without prejudice to the recognition or acceptance of its genetic
1990 relatedness to another taxon.

1991

1992 ***Conservation of Names***

1993

1994 **Rule 56b**

1995

1996 A **conserved name** (*nomen conservandum*) is a name that must be used instead of all earlier
1997 synonyms and homonyms.

1998

1999 *Note 1.* A conserved name (*nomen conservandum*) is conserved against all other names for
2000 the taxon, whether these are cited in the corresponding list of rejected names or not, so
2001 long as the taxon concerned is not united with another taxon bearing a legitimate name. In
2002 the event of union or reunion with another taxon, the earlier of the two competing names is
2003 adopted in accordance with Rules 23a and 23b.

2004

2005 *Note 2.* Only the Judicial Commission can place names on the list of **conserved names**
2006 (*nomina conservanda*) (see also Rule 23a, Note 4, and Appendix 4).

2007

2008 **Section 9. Orthography**

2009

2010 **Rule 57a**

2011

2012 Any name or epithet should be written in conformity with the spelling of the word from
2013 which it is derived and in strict accordance with the rules of Latin and latinization. Exceptions
2014 are provided for typographic and orthographic errors in Rule 61 and orthographic variants in
2015 Rules 62a and 62b (see also Appendix 9).

2016

2017 **Rule 57b**

2018

2019 In this *Code*, orthographic variant means a name (or epithet) that differs from another name
2020 only in the transliteration into Latin of the same word from a language other than Latin or in
2021 its grammatical correctness.

2022

2023 Example: *Haemophilus*, *Hemophilus*.

2024

2025 **Rule 57c**

2026

2027 If two or more generic names or two or more epithets in the same genus are so similar
2028 (although the words are from different sources) as to cause uncertainty, they may be
2029 treated as **perplexing names** (*nomina perplexa*) and the matter referred to the Judicial
2030 Commission [see Rule 56a(4)].

2031

2032 *Note 1. Orthographic variants* may be corrected by any author, provided this is done in
2033 accordance with the Note to Rule 61.

2034

2035 *Note 2. Perplexing names* may be placed on the list of rejected names only by the Judicial
2036 Commission, because decisions on the status of names derived from different sources
2037 differing in one or more letters affect many well-known names in the nomenclature of
2038 prokaryotes.

2039

2040 Examples: *Salmonella gamaba* and *Salmonella gambaga*.

2041

2042 **Rule 58**

2043

2044 If doubt exists about different spellings of the same name or epithet, or if two spellings are
2045 sufficiently alike so as to be confused, the question should be referred to the Judicial
2046 Commission, which may issue an **Opinion**. If one of the spellings is preferred by the Judicial
2047 Commission, that spelling should be used by succeeding authors.

2048

2049 Example: The epithet "*megaterium*" (over "*megatherium*") in the species name *Bacillus*
2050 *megaterium* de Bary 1884 (Opinion 1; Judicial Commission).

2051

2052 **Rule 59**

2053

2054 An epithet, even one derived from the name of a person, should not be written with an
2055 initial capital letter.

2056

2057 Example: *Shigella flexneri* (named after Flexner).

2058

2059 **Rule 60**

2060

2061 Intentional latinizations involving changes in orthography of personal names, particularly
2062 those of earlier authors, must be preserved.

2063

2064 Example: Chauveau has been latinized as Chauvoe, and *Clostridium chauvoei* is derived from
2065 Chauvoe.

2066

2067 **Typographic and Orthographic Errors**

2068

2069 **Rule 61**

2070

2071 The **original spelling** of a name or epithet must be retained, except typographic or
2072 orthographic errors. Original spelling does not refer to the use of an initial capital letter or to
2073 diacritic signs.

2074

2075 Example: The original spelling was *Bacillus megaterium*, not *megatherium* (Opinion 1;
2076 Judicial Commission).

2077

2078 An unintentional typographical or orthographic error later corrected by the author(s) is to be
2079 accepted in its corrected form without affecting the status and date of valid publication. It
2080 can also be corrected subsequently with or without mentioning that the spelling is
2081 corrected, although the abbreviation “**corrig.**” (corrigendum) may be appended to the name
2082 to draw attention to the correction. Succeeding authors may be unaware that the original
2083 usage was incorrect and use the spelling of the original author(s). Other succeeding authors
2084 may follow the correction of previous author(s) or may independently correct the spelling,

2085 but in no case is the use of corrig. regarded as obligatory. None of these corrections affects
2086 the status and date of valid publication.

2087

2088 Example: *Pasteurella mairi* (sic) Sneath and Stevens 1990. The typographic error was later
2089 corrected by Sneath [30] to *Pasteurella mairii*; this may be cited as *Pasteurella mairii* corrig.

2090

2091 *Note.* The liberty of correcting a name or epithet under Rules 61, 62a, and 62b must be used
2092 with reserve, especially if the change affects the first syllable and, above all, the first letter of
2093 the name or epithet.

2094

2095 ***Orthographic Variants by Transliteration***

2096

2097 **Rule 62a**

2098 Words differing only in transliteration into Latin from other languages that do not use the
2099 Latin alphabet are to be treated as **orthographic variants** unless they are used as the names
2100 of taxa based upon different types, when they are to be treated as **homonyms**.

2101

2102 Example: *Haemophilus* and *Hemophilus*.

2103

2104 **Rule 62b**

2105

2106 If orthographic variants exist based on the same type, and there is no clear indication that
2107 one is correct, authors have the right of choice.

2108

2109 ***Personal Names***

2110

2111 **Rule 63**

2112

2113 The genitive and adjectival forms of a personal name are treated as different epithets and
2114 not as orthographic variants, unless they are so similar as to cause confusion. For the
2115 latinization of personal names, see Appendix 9.

2116

2117 Example: The epithets *pasteurii* (genitive noun) and *pasteurianum* (adjective) are treated as
2118 different epithets.

2119

2120 ***Diacritic Signs***

2121

2122 **Rule 64**

2123

2124 Diacritic signs are not used in the nomenclature of prokaryotes.

2125

2126 In names or epithets derived from words with such signs, the signs must be suppressed and

2127 the letters transcribed as follows: (1) *ä*, *ö*; and *ü* become *ae*, *oe*, and *ue*; (2) *é*; *è*; and *ê*2128 become *e*; (3) *ø*, *æ*, and *å* become *oe*, *ae*, and *aa*, respectively.

2129

2130 ***Gender of Names***

2131

2132 **Rule 65**

2133

2134 The gender of generic names is governed by the following:

2135

2136 (1) A Latin or Classical Greek word adopted as a generic name retains the classical gender of

2137 its language of origin. Authors are recommended to give the gender of any proposed generic

2138 name.

2139

2140 Example: *Sarcina* (Latin feminine noun, a package).

2141

2142 In cases wherein the classical gender varies, the author has the right of choice between the

2143 alternatives (but see Opinion 3 of the Judicial Commission for the masculine gender of -

2144 *bacter*).

2145

2146 Example: *-incola* the gender may be masculine or feminine.

2147

2148 Doubtful cases should be referred to the Judicial Commission.

2149

2150 (2) Generic or subgeneric names that are modern compounds derived from two or more

2151 Latin or Greek words take the gender of the last component of the compound word.

2152

2153 Example: *Lactobacillus* (masculine) milk rodlet from Latin: *lac*, *lactis* (neuter), milk; and
2154 *bacillus* (masculine), little staff.

2155

2156 *Note.* As of 1 January 2023, generic names ending in *-oides* (from Gr. suff. *-eides* derived
2157 from Gr. neut. n. *eidos* that which is seen, form, shape, figure) will have the neuter gender,
2158 irrespective of the gender of the word or word element that precedes the *-oides* ending,
2159 and names ending in *-opsis* (from Gr. fem. n. *opsis* aspect, appearance) must be treated as
2160 feminine.

2161

2162 (3) Arbitrarily formed generic names or vernacular names used as generic names take the
2163 gender assigned to them by their authors, but must be based on the usage of comparable
2164 words in Latin where appropriate. If the original author(s) failed to indicate the gender,
2165 subsequent author(s) have the right of choice.

2166

2167 Examples: *Desemzia* Stackebrandt *et al.* 1999 was assigned the feminine gender; *Bergeyella*
2168 *Vandamme et al.* 1994 was assigned the feminine gender; *Aestuariivivens* Park *et al.* 2015
2169 was given the neuter gender; no gender was assigned yet to *Pontivivens* Park *et al.* 2015;
2170 *Marivivens* Park *et al.* 2016 was given as masculine or feminine; a subsequent author may
2171 choose.

2172 **CHAPTER 4. ADVISORY NOTES**

2173

2174 **A. Suggestions for Authors and Publishers**

2175

2176 An author who describes and names a new taxon should indicate the rank of the taxon
2177 concerned and, where possible, the rank and name of the next higher taxon (e.g., the name
2178 of the family to which a new genus is allocated or the name of the order in which a new
2179 family is placed). The title of the work concerned should indicate that a new name is
2180 published even if the name itself is not quoted in the title.

2181

2182 It is recommended to print scientific names by a different typeface, e.g., italic, or by some
2183 other device to distinguish them from the rest of the text.

2184

2185 The name of a genus should be spelled without abbreviation the first time it is used with a
2186 specific epithet in a publication and in the summary of that publication.

2187

2188 Example: *Bacillus subtilis*.

2189

2190 Later use of the name of the species previously cited usually has the name of the genus
2191 abbreviated, commonly to the first letter of the generic name.

2192

2193 Example: *B. subtilis*.

2194

2195 If, however, species are listed belonging to two or more genera which have the same initial
2196 letter, the generic name should be used in full, or initial two-letter or three-letter
2197 abbreviations should be used. Some subcommittees on taxonomy have recommended
2198 three-letter abbreviations to be used in such cases.

2199

2200 **B. Quotations of Authors and Names**

2201

2202 (1) *Multiple authorship (et al.)*. When the new name of a taxon is published under two
2203 authors, both are cited; when there are more than two authors and when there is no
2204 definite designation of a single individual as the author of the name, the citation may be

2205 made by listing the names of all the authors or by giving the name of the first author,
2206 followed by the abbreviation “*et al.*” (*et alii*).

2207

2208 (2) *Publication in the work of another author (in)*. When a new name or combination by one
2209 author is published in a work of another author, the word “*in*” should be used in the
2210 literature cited to connect the names of the two authors. The name of the author of the
2211 name of the taxon precedes the name of the author in whose work it is contained.

2212

2213 Example: *Halobacterium* Elazari-Volcani 1957 *in* Breed *et al.* Bergey's Manual of
2214 Determinative Bacteriology, 7th ed., 1957, The Williams & Wilkins Co, Baltimore.

2215

2216 (3) Use of “**pro synonym**,” “**ex**,” “**non**,” and “**sic**.”

2217 a. When citing a name published as a synonym, the words “as synonym” or “**pro synonym**.”
2218 should be added to the citation. (For types of **synonym**, see Rule 24a.)

2219

2220 Example: *Wautersia eutropha* pro synonym. *Cupriavidus necator*.

2221

2222 b. When an author publishes a name from a manuscript of another author, or revives
2223 another author's name (Rule 33c, Note 2), whether as a synonym or not, the word “*ex*”
2224 should be used to connect the names of the two authors. The name of the author who
2225 publishes the name precedes that of the original author.

2226

2227 Example: *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* (*ex* Yabuuchi and Ohyama 1971) Yabuuchi and Yano
2228 1981 nom. rev. A subsequent author citing this revived name would use the citation
2229 *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* (*ex* Yabuuchi and Ohyama 1971) Yabuuchi and Yano 1981 or
2230 *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* Yabuuchi and Yano 1981.

2231

2232 c. When citing in synonymy a name invalidated by an earlier homonym, the citation
2233 should be followed by the name of the author of the earlier homonym preceded by the
2234 word “*non*”, preferably with the date of publication added.

2235

2236 Example: *Achromobacter* Yabuuchi and Yano 1981 (*non Achromobacter* Bergey *et al.* 1923).

2237

2238 d. If a name or epithet is adopted with alterations from the form as originally published,
2239 including the use of a corrected spelling, the original spelling should be cited in any list of
2240 synonyms of the corrected name. The original spelling is followed by the term “*sic*” in
2241 parentheses to indicate that the original spelling is accurately cited.

2242

2243 Example: *Bacteroides tectum* (*sic*) Love *et al.* 1986, changed to *Bacterioides tectus* (*corrig.*)
2244 (“*corrigendum*”) Love *et al.* 1986.

2245

2246 (4) *Nomen nudum*. In the citation of a **bare name** (*nomen nudum*), the status of the name
2247 should be indicated by adding “*nom. nud.*”.

2248

2249 *Note*. A **bare name** (*nomen nudum*) means a name published without a description or a
2250 reference to a previously published description.

2251

2252 Example: Not yet found.

2253

2254 (5) *Nomen conservandum*. A **conserved name** (*nomen conservandum*) shall be indicated by
2255 the addition of the abbreviation “*nom. cons.*” to the citation.

2256

2257 Example: *Pseudomonas* Migula 1894 *nom. cons.* (Opinion 5).

2258 **APPENDIX 1. CODES OF NOMENCLATURE**

2259

2260 **International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes (ICNP)¹**

2261

2262 ¹. Formerly the *International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria* (1966), and, earlier, the
2263 *International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses* (1958) and the *International*
2264 *Bacteriological Code of Nomenclature* (1948). Also known as the *Bacteriological Code*, and,
2265 since 2008, as the *Prokaryotic Code*.

2266

2267 This Appendix lists the current versions of Codes other than the *ICNP*. Details of earlier
2268 versions can be found in Appendix 1 of the 2008 revision of the *ICNP* (Parker *et al.* 2019).

2269

2270 Early drafts of the *International Bacteriological Code of Nomenclature* were published in
2271 1947 [31] and reprinted in the *Journal of Bacteriology* in 1948 [32] and as a reprint in the
2272 *Journal of General Microbiology* in 1949 [33]. The first edition of the code approved by the
2273 Judicial Commission was published as an annotated book in 1958 as the *International Code*
2274 *of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses* [34]. The 1966 revision was published as the
2275 International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria in article form, in the *International Journal*
2276 *of Systematic Bacteriology*, as an update to Chapters 1–4 [35]. Subsequent editions were
2277 published as books in 1975 (1975 Revision) [36] and 1992 (1990 Revision) [37]. The 2008
2278 revision as the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* was published as a
2279 supplement to the *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* in 2019
2280 [1].

2281

2282 **International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants (ICN) [38]²**

2283

2284 ². Formerly the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (ICBN)* and earlier, the
2285 International Rules of Botanical Nomenclature. Also known informally as the *Botanical Code*.

2286

2287 **International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants (ICNCP) [39]³**

2288

2289 ³. Also known informally as the *Cultivated Plant Code*.

2290

2291 **International Code of Zoological Nomenclature (ICZN Code) [40]⁴**

2292

2293 ⁴. Also known informally as the *Zoological Code*. ICZN stands for the International

2294 Commission on Zoological Nomenclature.

2295

2296 **International Code of Virus Classification and Nomenclature [41]**

2297

2298 ***BioCode***

2299

2300 In March 1994, a meeting was held in Egham, United Kingdom, to investigate the feasibility

2301 of harmonizing the five major Codes of Nomenclature. The project originally had an

2302 implementation goal of January 1, 2000, but failed to receive support from the individual

2303 codes of nomenclature. A revised draft of the *BioCode* was published in 2011 [42] and

2304 continues to seek support.

2305

2306 ***International Code of Phytosociological Nomenclature***

2307

2308 In 1976, the International Society for Vegetation Science⁵ published a formal code of

2309 nomenclature for communities of plant species, the *International Code of Phytosociological*

2310 *Nomenclature (ICPN)*. The third edition of the code was jointly prepared by the IAVS and the

2311 Fédération Internationale de Phytosociologie (FIP).

2312

2313 ⁵. Now the International Association for Vegetation Science (IAVS) [43].

2314 **APPENDIX 2. APPROVED LISTS OF BACTERIAL NAMES**

2315

2316 The *Approved Lists of Bacterial Names* consist of two Lists that were published on 1 January
2317 1980 in the IJSB [44]:

2318 Approved List 1. Names of taxa above the rank of genus, pp. 231–238.

2319 Approved List 2. Names of genera, species, and subspecies, pp. 239–420.

2320 See also the Corrigenda (1984) [45] and the reprint of the *Approved Lists* (1989) [46].

2321

2322 For information about the history of the *Approved Lists*, see Sneath, 2005 [47].

2323 **APPENDIX 3. PUBLISHED SOURCES FOR NAMES OF PROKARYOTIC, ALGAL, PROTOZOAL,**
 2324 **FUNGAL, AND VIRAL TAXA**

2325

2326 The following publications are among the major references for names of prokaryotic, algal,
 2327 protozoal, fungal, and viral taxa.

2328

2329 Following the introduction of the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names in 1980 [44-46], names
 2330 published prior to 1980 that did not appear on either of the Approved Lists or the

2331 Corrigenda to the Approved Lists are not validly published unless subsequently validly

2332 published in accordance with the Rules of this *Code*. Information on many other names

2333 published prior to 1980 is found in the *Index Bergeyana* [29,48].

2334

2335 Prokaryotic names validly published since 1980 are published in the IJSEM as articles,

2336 Notification Lists and Validation Lists [49,50]. The first Validation List was published in Vol.

2337 27, no. 3 of the IJSB in 1977; Notification Lists were first added in Vol. 41, no 3 of the IJSB in

2338 1991.

2339

2340 A comprehensive list of prokaryotic names, their status and their bibliographic history has

2341 been published as the Taxonomic Outline of Bacteria and Archaea [51]. Further information

2342 that is regularly updated is found online in the websites LPSN - List of Prokaryotic names

2343 with Standing in Nomenclature (www.bacterio.net; <https://lpsn.dsmz.de/> [Accessed

2344 29.7.2022]) and NamesforLife (<https://www.namesforlife.com/search> [Accessed 29.7.2022])

2345 and in the following sources:

2346 - for all groups of prokaryotes: *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria* [52].

2347 - for pathovars and phytopathogenic bacteria: [53].

2348 - for cyanobacteria: [54].

2349 - for algae: [55-60].

2350 - for protozoa: [61-64].

2351 - for fungi: [65-69].

2352 - for viruses: [70,71].

2353 - general: [72].

2354 **APPENDIX 4. CONSERVED AND REJECTED NAMES OF PROKARYOTIC TAXA**2355 **(Nomina taxorum conservanda et rejicienda)**

2356

2357 List 1. *Family names conserved and rejected by the Judicial Commission of the International*
2358 *Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International Committee on Nomenclature of*
2359 *Prokaryotes.*

2360

2361 List 2. *Names of genera of prokaryotes conserved by the Judicial Commission of the*
2362 *International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International Committee on*
2363 *Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2364

2365 List 3. *Specific epithets in names of species of prokaryotes conserved by the Judicial*
2366 *Commission of the International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International*
2367 *Committee on Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2368

2369 List 4. *Names of classes of prokaryotes rejected by the Judicial Commission of the*
2370 *International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International Committee on*
2371 *Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2372

2373 List 5. *Names of orders of prokaryotes rejected by the Judicial Commission of the*
2374 *International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International Committee on*
2375 *Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2376

2377 List 6. *Names of genera and subgenera of prokaryotes rejected by the Judicial Commission of*
2378 *the International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature / International Committee on*
2379 *Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2380

2381 List 7. *Specific and subspecific epithets in names of species and subspecies of prokaryotes*
2382 *rejected by the Judicial Commission of the International Committee on Bacteriological*
2383 *Nomenclature / International Committee on Nomenclature of Prokaryotes.*

2384

2385 The citations are (unless otherwise indicated) to the volumes, pages, and dates of the
2386 *International Bulletin of Bacteriological Nomenclature and Taxonomy* until vol. 15 (1965).
2387 From vol. 16 (1966) through vol. 49 (1999) the citations are for the *International Journal of*

- 2388 *Systematic Bacteriology* and thereafter of the *International Journal of Systematic and*
2389 *Evolutionary Microbiology*.

2390

2391 **List 1.** *Conserved and rejected family names of prokaryotes (nomina familiarum conservanda et rejicienda)*

2392

Conserved name (<i>nomen conservandum</i>)	Name of type genus of conserved family	Rejected name (<i>nomen rejiciendum</i>)	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>Enterobacteriaceae</i>	<i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919, p. 841	<i>Bacteriaceae</i> (see Opinion 4,4:142 [1954])	15	8:73–74 (1958) 32:464–465 (1982) 35:272–273 (1985) 36:577–578 (1986)

2393

2394

2395 **List 2.** *Conserved names of genera of prokaryotes (nomina generum conservanda)*

2396

Conserved generic names (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>)	Name of type species of conserved genus	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>Aeromonas</i> Stanier 1943	<i>Aeromonas hydrophila</i> (Chester 1901) Stanier 1943	48	23:473–474 (1973)
<i>Agrobacterium</i> Conn 1942	<i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942	33	20:10 (1970)

<i>Arthrobacter</i> Conn and Dimmick 1947	<i>Arthrobacter globiformis</i> (Conn 1928) Conn and Dimmick 1947	24	8:171–172 (1958)
<i>Bacillus</i> Cohn 1872	<i>Bacillus subtilis</i> Cohn 1872	A. (1936)	Proc. 2nd Internatl. Congr. Microbiol. London, 1936; <i>Journal of Bacteriology</i> , 33:445 (1937); <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (1958), p. 148
<i>Beggiatoa</i> Trevisan 1842	<i>Beggiatoa alba</i> (Vaucher 1803) Trevisan 1845, <i>Oscillatoria alba</i> Vaucher 1803	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Chlorobacterium</i> Lauterborn 1916	<i>Chlorobacterium symbioticum</i> Lauterborn 1916	6	4:143 (1954)
<i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1880	<i>Chromobacterium violaceum</i> Bergonzini 1880	16	8:151–152 (1958)
<i>Enterobacter</i> Hormaeche and Edwards 1960	<i>Enterobacter cloacae</i> (Jordan 1890) Hormaeche and Edwards 1960	28	13:38 (1963)
<i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919	<i>Escherichia coli</i> (Migula 1895) Castellani and Chalmers 1919 (basonym <i>Bacillus coli</i> Migula 1895, hyponym <i>Bacterium coli commune</i> Escherich 1885)	15	8:73–74 (1958)
<i>Gallionella</i> Ehrenberg 1838	<i>Gallionella ferruginea</i> Ehrenberg 1838	9	4:146–147 (1954)
<i>Klebsiella</i> Trevisan 1885	<i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> (Schroeter 1886) Trevisan 1887 (<i>Bacterium pneumoniae-crouposae</i> Zopf 1885)	13	4:151–156 (1954)

<i>Kurthia</i> Trevisan 1885	<i>Kurthia zopfii</i> (Kurth 1883) Trevisan 1885 (<i>Bacterium zopfii</i> Kurth 1883)	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Lactobacillus</i> Beijerinck 1901	<i>Lactobacillus delbrueckii</i> Beijerinck 1901 (<i>non Lactobacillus caucasicus</i> Beijerinck 1901)	38	21:104 (1971)
<i>Leptotrichia</i> Trevisan 1879	<i>Leptotrichia buccalis</i> (Robin 1853) Trevisan 1879 (<i>Leptothrix buccalis</i> Robin 1853)	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Listeria</i> Pirie 1940	<i>Listeria monocytogenes</i> (Murray, Webb, and Swann 1926) Pirie 1940 (<i>Bacterium monocytogenes</i> Murray <i>et al.</i> 1926)	12	4:150–151 (1954)
<i>Methanococcus</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984	<i>Methanococcus vannielii</i> Stadtman and Barker 1951 (Approved Lists 1980)	62	36: 91 (1986)
<i>Methanosarcina</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984	<i>Methanosarcina barkeri</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984	63	36:492 (1986)
<i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939	<i>Moraxella lacunata</i> (Eyre 1900) Lwoff 1939	41	21:106 (1971)
<i>Mycoplasma</i> Nowak 1929	<i>Mycoplasma mycoides</i> (Borrel <i>et al.</i> 1910) Freundt 1955	22	8:166–168 (1958)
<i>Neisseria</i> Trevisan 1885	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> (Zopf 1885) Trevisan 1885 (<i>Merismopedia gonorrhoeae</i> Zopf 1885)	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Nitrobacter</i> Winogradsky 1892	<i>Nitrobacter winogradskyi</i> Winslow <i>et al.</i> 1917	23	8:169–170 (1958)
<i>Nitrosococcus</i> Winogradsky 1892	<i>Nitrosococcus nitrosus</i> (Migula 1900) Buchanan 1925	23	8:169–170 (1958)

<i>Nitrosomonas</i> Winogradsky 1892	<i>Nitrosomonas europaea</i> Winogradsky 1892	23	8:169–170 (1958)
<i>Nocardia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Nocardia asteroides</i> (Eppinger 1891) Blanchard 1896 (replacing <i>Nocardia farcinica</i> Trevisan 1889)	13 58	3:87–100 (1953) 3:141–154 (1953) 4:151–156 (1954) 35:538 (1985)
<i>Pasteurella</i> Trevisan 1887	<i>Pasteurella multocida</i> (Lehmann and Neumann 1899) Rosenbusch and Marchant 1939 (replacing <i>Pasteurella</i> <i>choleraegallinarum</i> Trevisan 1887)	13 58	4:151–156 (1954) 35:538 (1985)
<i>Pediococcus</i> Claussen 1903	<i>Pediococcus damnosus</i> Claussen 1903	52	26:292 (1976)
<i>Pseudomonas</i> Migula 1894	<i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (Schroeter 1872) Migula 1900 (<i>Bacterium aeruginosum</i> Schroeter 1872)	5	2:121–122 (1952)
<i>Rhizobium</i> Frank 1889	<i>Rhizobium leguminosarum</i> (Frank 1879) Frank 1889 (<i>Schinzia</i> <i>leguminosarum</i> Frank 1879)	34	20:11–12 (1970)
<i>Rickettsia</i> da Rocha-Lima 1916	<i>Rickettsia prowazekii</i> da Rocha-Lima 1916	19	8:158–159 (1958)
<i>Rhodopseudomonas</i> Czurda and Maresch emend. van Niel 1944	<i>Rhodopseudomonas palustris</i> (Molisch 1907) van Niel 1944 (<i>Rhodobacillus palustris</i> Molisch 1907)	49	24:551 (1974)
<i>Selenomonas</i> von Prowazek 1913	<i>Selenomonas sputigena</i> (Flügge 1886) Boskamp 1922 (basonym <i>Spirillum sputigenum</i> Flügge 1886)	21	8:163–165 (1958)

<i>Staphylococcus</i> Rosenbach 1884	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Rosenbach 1884	17	8:153–154 (1958)
<i>Vibrio</i> Pacini 1854	<i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini 1854	31	15:185–186 (1965)

2397

2398

2399 **List 3.** *Conserved specific epithets in names of species of prokaryotes (epitheta specifica conservanda)*

2400

Conserved specific epithets (<i>epitheta specifica conservanda</i>)	Name of species in which specific epithet is conserved	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>acidilactici</i>	<i>Pediococcus acidilactici</i> Lindner 1887	68	46:835 (1996)
<i>agalactiae</i>	<i>Streptococcus agalactiae</i> Lehmann and Neumann 1896 (<i>Streptococcus agalactiae contagiosae</i> Kitt 1893)	8	4:145–146 (1954)
<i>avium</i>	<i>Mycobacterium avium</i> Chester 1901	47	23:472 (1973)
<i>botulinum</i>	<i>Clostridium botulinum</i> (van Ermengem 1896) Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923	69	49:339 (1999)
<i>boydii</i>	<i>Shigella boydii</i> Ewing 1949	11	4:148–150 (1954)
<i>cholerae</i>	<i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini 1854	31	15:185–186 (1965)
<i>enterica</i>	<i>Salmonella enterica</i> (ex Kauffmann and Edwards 1952) Le Minor and Popoff 1987	80	55:519–520 (2005)
<i>faecalis</i>	<i>Streptococcus faecalis</i> Andrewes and Horder 1906	30	13:167 (1963)

<i>fermentum</i>	<i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> Beijerinck 1901	50	24:551–552 (1974)
<i>flexneri</i>	<i>Shigella flexneri</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 (<i>Bacillus dysenteriae</i> Flexner 1900)	11	4:148–150 (1954)
<i>forsythia</i>	<i>Tannerella forsythia</i> (Tanner <i>et al.</i> 1986) Sakamoto <i>et al.</i> 2002	85	58:1974 (2011)
<i>fortuitum</i>	<i>Mycobacterium fortuitum</i> da Costa Cruz 1938	51	24:552 (1974)
<i>meningitidis</i>	The meningococcus (<i>Diplococcus intracellularis meningitides</i> Weichselbaum 1887)	35	20:13–14 (1970)
<i>pestis</i>	<i>Yersinia pestis</i> (Lehmann and Neumann 1899) van Loghem 1944	60	35:540 (1985)
<i>phenylpyruvica</i>	<i>Moraxella phenylpyruvica</i> Bøvre and Henriksen 1967	42	21:107 (1971)
<i>prowazekii</i>	<i>Rickettsia prowazekii</i> da Rocha-Lima 1916	19	8:158–159 (1958)
<i>ramosa</i>	<i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> Metchnikoff 1888 emend. Starr <i>et al.</i> 1983	61	36:119 (1986)
<i>rhusiopathiae</i>	<i>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</i> (Migula 1900) Buchanan 1918	32	20:9 (1970)
<i>sonnei</i>	<i>Shigella sonnei</i> (Levine 1920) Weldin 1927 (<i>Bacterium sonnei</i> Levine 1920)	11	4:148–150 (1954)
<i>sphaeroides</i>	<i>Rhodopseudomonas sphaeroides</i> van Niel 1944	43	21:108 (1971)
<i>sporogenes</i>	<i>Clostridium sporogenes</i> (Mechnikoff 1908) Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923	69	49:339 (1999)
<i>typhi</i>	<i>Salmonella typhi</i> (Schroeter 1886) Warren and Scott 1930 (<i>Bacillus typhi</i> Schroeter 1886)	18	13:31–33 (1963), see also 8:155–156 (1958)

2401

2402

2403 **List 4. Rejected names of classes of prokaryotes (nomina classium rejicienda)**

2404

Rejected class names (<i>nomina classium rejicienda</i>)	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>Acidobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Alphabacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Arabobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Archaeoglobea</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Arthrobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chlamydiae</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chlorobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chlorobea</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chromatibacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chroobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Crenarchaeota</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Deltabacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Epsilobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Ferrobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Flavobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Gloeobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Hadobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Halomebacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)

<i>Hormogoneae</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Methanothermea</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Picrophileia</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Planctomycea</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Protoarchaea</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Spirochaetes</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Streptomyces</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Teichobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Togobacteria</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)

2405

2406

2407 **List 5. Rejected names of orders of prokaryotes (*nomina ordinum rejicienda*)**

2408

Rejected order names (<i>nomina ordinum rejicienda</i>)	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>Acidobacteriales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Actinoplanales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Cenarchaeales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Chroococcales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Geovibriales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Gloeobacterales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)

<i>Nostocales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Oscillatoriales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Picrophilales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Pleurocapsales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Stigonematales</i> (ex Geitler 1925) Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)
<i>Streptomycetales</i> Cavalier-Smith 2002	79 (suppl.)	64:3599–3602 (2014)

2409

2410

2411 **List 6.** *Rejected names of genera and subgenera of prokaryotes nomina generum et subgenerum rejicienda*

2412

Rejected generic or subgeneric names (<i>nomina generum et subgenerum rejicienda</i>)	Names of type species of rejected genera or subgenera	Notes	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>Aerobacter</i> Beijerinck 1900	<i>Aerobacter aerogenes</i> (Kruse 1896) Beijerinck 1900	<i>Nomen ambiguum</i>	46	21:110 (1971)
<i>Astasia</i> Meyer 1897	<i>Astasia asterospora</i> Meyer 1897	Later homonym of <i>Astasia</i> Ehrenberg 1830 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Astasia</i> Pribram 1929	None designated. No species listed.	Later homonym of protozoan generic name <i>Astasia</i> Ehrenberg 1830	14	4:156–158 (1954)

<i>Babesia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Babesia xanthopyrethica</i> (sic) Trevisan 1880 (<i>Streptococcus xanthopyreticus</i> Trevisan 1887)	The later homonym <i>Babesia</i> Starcovici 1893 is in common use as the name of a protozoan genus. <i>Nomen confusum</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Bacteriopsis</i> Trevisan 1885 (subgenus)	<i>Bacteriopsis rasmussenii</i> Trevisan 1885 (Leptothrix I Rasmussen 1883)	<i>Nomen confusum</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Bacterium</i> Ehrenberg 1828	<i>Bacterium triloculare</i> Ehrenberg 1828	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	4 (revised)	4:142 (1954) see also 1:145–146 (1951) and 3:141–154 (1953)
<i>Billetia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Billetia laminariae</i> (Billet 1888) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacterium laminariae</i> Billet 1888)	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Castellanella</i> Pacheco and Rodrigues 1930	<i>Castellanella alcaescens</i> (Andrewes 1918) Pacheco and Rodrigues 1930 (<i>Bacillus alcaescens</i> Andrewes 1918)	Illegitimate later homonym of <i>Castellanella</i> Chalmers 1918 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Cenomesia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Cenomesia albida</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Chlorobacterium</i> Guillebeau 1890	<i>Chlorobacterium lactis</i> Guillebeau 1890		6	4:143 (1954)
<i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1879	None designated		16	8:151–152 (1958)
<i>Cloaca</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919	<i>Cloaca cloacae</i> (Jordan 1890) Castellani and Chalmers 1919		28	13:38 (1963)

<i>Coccomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1921	None designated. No species included.	Later illegitimate homonym of <i>Coccomonas</i> Stein 1878 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Cornilia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Cornilia alvei</i> (Cheshire and Cheyne 1885) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus alvei</i> Cheshire and Cheyne 1885)		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Dicoccia</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Dicoccia glossophila</i> Trevisan 1889		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Eucornilia</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Cornilia (Eucornilia) alvei</i> (Cheshire and Cheyne 1885) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus alvei</i> Cheshire and Cheyne 1885)		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Eumantegazzaea</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Mantegazzaea (Eumantegazzaea) cienkowskii</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Eupacinia</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Pacinia (Eupacinia) putrifica</i> (Flügge 1886) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus putrificus coli</i> Flügge 1886)	<i>Nomen confusum</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Euspirillum</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Spirillum (Euspirillum) undula</i> (Mueller 1873) Ehrenberg 1830 (<i>Vibrio undula</i> Mueller 1773)		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Gaffkya</i> Trevisan 1885	<i>Gaffkya tetragena</i> (Gaffky 1881) Trevisan 1885		39	21:104–105 (1971)

<i>Herellea</i> De Bord 1942	<i>Herellea vaginicola</i> De Bord 1942		40	21:105–106 (1971)
<i>Leptotrichiella</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Leptotrichia (Leptotrichiella) amphibola</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Listerella</i> Pirie 1927	<i>Listerella hepatolytica</i> Pirie 1927 (<i>Bacterium monocytogenes</i> Murray <i>et al.</i> 1926)	Illegitimate later homonym of <i>Listerella</i> Jahn 1906 (Myxomycetes)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Mantegazzaea</i> Trevisan 1879	<i>Mantegazzaea cienkowskii</i> Trevisan 1879	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Methanothrix</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983	<i>Methanothrix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 ¹	<i>Nomen confusum</i> (type species)	75	58:1753–1754 (2008)
<i>Mima</i> De Bord 1939, 1942	<i>Mima polymorpha</i> De Bord 1939, 1942		40	21:105–106 (1971)
<i>Nitromonas</i> Winogradsky 1890	None designated		23	8:169–170 (1958)
<i>Nitromonas</i> Orla- Jensen 1909	None designated		23	8:169–170 (1958)
<i>Octopsis</i> Trevisan 1885	<i>Octopsis cholerae-gallinarum</i> Trevisan 1885 (<i>Micrococcus cholerae-gallinarum</i> Zopf 1885)		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Palmula</i> Prévot 1938	<i>Palmula spermoides</i> Prévot 1938	Illegitimate later homonym of <i>Palmula</i> Lea 1833 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)

<i>Pelczaria</i> Poston 1994	<i>Pelczaria aurantia</i> Poston 1994		78	55:515 (2005)
<i>Perroncitoa</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Perroncitoa scarlatinosa</i> (Trevisan 1879) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Micrococcus</i> <i>scarlatinus</i> Trevisan 1879)	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Pfeifferella</i> Buchanan 1918	<i>Pfeifferella mallei</i> (Zopf 1885) Buchanan 1918 (<i>Bacillus mallei</i> Zopf 1885)	Illegitimate later homonym of <i>Pfeifferella</i> Labbé 1899 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Phytomonas</i> Bergey et al. 1923	<i>Phytomonas campestris</i> (Pammel 1895) Bergey et al. 1923 (<i>Bacillus campestris</i> Pammel 1895)	Illegitimate later homonym of <i>Phytomonas</i> Donovan 1909 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)
<i>Pleurospora</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Cornilia (Pleurospora) tremula</i> (Koch 1877) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus tremulus</i> Koch 1877)	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Polymonas</i> Lieske 1928	<i>Polymonas tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Lieske 1928 (<i>Bacterium</i> <i>tumefaciens</i> Smith and Townsend 1907)		33	20:10 (1970)
<i>Pseudospira</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Pacinia (Pseudospira) choleraeasiaticae</i> Trevisan 1889		13	4:151–156 (1954)
<i>Pseudospirillum</i> Trevisan 1889 (subgenus)	<i>Spirillum (Pseudospirillum) amphibolum</i> Trevisan 1889	<i>Nomen dubium</i>	13	4:151–156 (1954)

<i>Rhizomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1909 <i>Rhizomonas</i> (van Bruggen <i>et al.</i> 1990)	None designated. No species included	Later homonym of <i>Rhizomonas</i> Kent 1880 (Protozoa) Reaffirmed by Judicial Commission 1999	14	4:156–158 (1954) 50:2242 (2000)
<i>Rhodospaera</i> Buchanan 1918	<i>Rhodospaera capsulata</i> (Molisch 1907) Buchanan 1918 (<i>Rhodococcus capsulatus</i> Molisch 1907)	Later homonym of <i>Rhodospaera</i> Haeckel 1881 (Protozoa)	14	4:156–158 (1954)

2413

2414 ¹This opinion was reconsidered in 2014 by Opinion 75 Supplementary (64:3597–3598) and *Methanotherix* Huser *et al.* 1983 is not to be considered as a
2415 rejected name.

2416

2417

2418 **List 7. Rejected specific and subspecific epithets in names of species and subspecies of prokaryotes (*epitheta specifica et subspecifica rejicienda*)**

2419

Rejected specific and subspecific epithets (<i>epitheta specifica et subspecifica rejicienda</i>)	Name of species in which specific or subspecific epithet is rejected	Opinion no.	Citations
<i>anaerobius</i>	<i>Peptococcus anaerobius</i> (Hamm 1912) Douglas 1957	56	32:468 (1982)
<i>aquae</i>	<i>Mycobacterium aquae</i> Jenkins <i>et al.</i> 1972	55	32:467 (1982)
<i>aurantia</i>	<i>Pelczaria aurantia</i> Poston 1994	78	55:515 (2005)

<i>caucasicus</i>	<i>Lactobacillus caucasicus</i> Beijerinck 1901	38	21:104 (1971)
<i>citrovorum</i>	<i>Leuconostoc citrovorum</i> (Hammer 1920) Hucker and Pederson 1931	45	21:109–110 (1971)
<i>denitrificans</i>	<i>Pseudomonas denitrificans</i> (Christensen 1903) Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923	54	32:466 (1982)
<i>diversus</i>	<i>Citrobacter diversus</i> (Burkey 1928) Werkman and Gillen 1932	67	43:392 (1993)
<i>fosteri</i>	<i>Thermomicrobium fosteri</i> Phillips and Perry 1976 (Approved Lists 1980)	107	72:005197(2022)
<i>gallicida</i>	<i>Pasteurella gallicida</i> (Burrill 1883) Buchanan 1925	58	35:538 (1985)
<i>hoagii</i>	<i>Corynebacterium hoagii</i> (Morse 1912) Ebersson 1918 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Rhodococcus hoagii</i> (Morse 1912) Kämpfer <i>et al.</i> 2014	106	72:005197(2022)
<i>liquefaciens</i>	<i>Aerobacter liquefaciens</i> Beijerinck 1901	48	23:473–474 (1973)
<i>marianum</i>	<i>Mycobacterium marianum</i> Penso 1953	53	28:334 (1978)
<i>methanica</i>	<i>Methanosarcina methanica</i> (Smit 1930) Kluver and van Niel 1936 (Approved Lists 1980)	63	36:492 (1986)
<i>pestis</i>	<i>Yersinia pseudotuberculosis</i> subsp. <i>pestis</i> (van Loghem 1944) Bercovier <i>et al.</i> 1981	60	35:540 (1985)
<i>polymorpha</i>	<i>Mima polymorpha</i> (De Bord 1939) De Bord 1942	40	21:105–106 (1971)
<i>putrificum</i>	<i>Clostridium putrificum</i> (Trevisan 1889) Reddish and Rettger 1922	69	49:339 (1999)
<i>scabies</i>	<i>Streptomyces scabies</i> (ex Thaxter 1891) Lambert and Loria 1989	79	70:1439-1440 (2020)
<i>soehngenii</i>	<i>Methanotherix soehngenii</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 ²	75	58:1753–1754 (2008)

<i>thermophila</i>	<i>Methanotherix thermophila</i> Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992	75 (suppl.)	64:3597–3598 (2014)
<i>vaginicola</i>	<i>Herellea vaginicola</i> De Bord 1942	40	21:105–106 (1971)
<i>variabilis</i>	<i>Halomonas variabilis</i> (Fendrich 1989)	93	64:3588–3589 (2014)

2420

2421 ²This opinion was reconsidered in 2014 by Opinion 75 Supplementary (64:3597–3598). *Methanotherix soehngenei* Huser *et al.* 1983 is not to be considered as

2422 a rejected name.

2423 APPENDIX 5. OPINIONS RELATING TO THE NOMENCLATURE OF PROKARYOTES

2424

2425

List of Opinions			
<i>Opinions issued by the International Committee on Bacteriological Nomenclature at the Second International Congress for Microbiology, London, 1936</i>			
Opinion	Title	Reference and notes	Result
A	Conservation of the generic name <i>Bacillus</i> Cohn 1872, designation of the type species, and of the type strain of the species	<i>J Bacteriol</i> 1937;33:445–447; and <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (1958), p. 148	<p>(a) It was agreed that <i>Bacillus</i> Cohn 1872 should be designated as a <i>genus conservandum</i>.</p> <p>(b) It was agreed that the type species of <i>Bacillus</i> should be designated as <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> Cohn 1872 <i>emendavit</i> Prazmowski 1880.</p> <p>(c) It was agreed that the type (or standard) strain should be the Marburg strain.</p> <p>(d) It was agreed that cultures of the type (or standard) strain of <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> together with complete description should be maintained at each of the recognized Type Culture Collections.</p> <p>(e) It was agreed that the genus <i>Bacillus</i> should be so defined as to exclude bacterial species which do not produce endospores.</p> <p>(f) It was agreed that the term <i>Bacillus</i> should be used as a generic name and that it should be differentiated from the terms “bacillus,” “bacille,” and “Bazillus” used as morphological designations.</p>
B	Generic homonyms in the group <i>Protista</i>	<i>J Bacteriol</i> 1937;33:445–447; <i>International Code of</i>	<p>(a) It was agreed that generic homonyms are not permitted in the group <i>Protista</i>.</p> <p>(b) It was agreed that it is advisable to avoid homonyms amongst <i>Protista</i> on the one hand, and a plant or animal on the other.</p>

		<i>Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (1958), p. 148	
C	Capitalization of specific epithets derived from names of persons	<i>J Bacteriol</i> 1937;33:445–447; <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (1958), p. 148	It was agreed that while specific substantive names derived from names of persons may be written with a capital initial letter, all other specific names are to be written with a small initial letter. Note. This Opinion is revoked by Rule 59 of this <i>Code</i> , and Recommendation 27h of the 1958 and 1966 editions of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria (and Viruses)</i> stated: “A specific epithet, even one derived from the name of a person, should not be written with an initial capital letter.”

2426

List of Opinions			
<i>Opinions issued by the Judicial Commission</i>			
Opinion	Title	Reference and notes	Result
1	The correct spelling of the specific epithet in the species name <i>Bacillus megaterium</i> de Bary 1884	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1951;1:35–36	The spelling <i>megaterium</i> of the specific epithet in <i>Bacillus megaterium</i> de Bary is to be preferred to the spelling <i>megatherium</i> .
2	The combining forms (stems) of compound bacterial generic names	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1951;1:37–38	The combining form or stem of the last component of names ending in <i>-bacterium</i> is <i>-bacteri</i> , of those ending in <i>-bactrum</i> or <i>bactron</i> is <i>-bactr</i> , and of those ending in -

	ending in <i>-bacterium</i> , <i>-bacter</i> , or <i>-bactrum</i> (<i>-bactron</i>)		<i>bacter</i> is <i>-bacter</i> . Family names derived from such generic names have, respectively, the endings <i>-bacteriaceae</i> , <i>-bactraceae</i> , and <i>-bacteraceae</i> .
3	Gender of bacterial names ending in <i>-bacter</i>	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1951;1 (part 2):36–37, and 1952;1:84–85 in re-issue of volume (1951)	The names of bacterial genera which end in <i>-bacter</i> should be regarded as having the masculine gender.
4 (revised)	Rejection of generic name <i>Bacterium</i> Ehrenberg	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:142) see also 1651;1:145–146 and 1953;3:141–154 Minute 9	(1) The bacterial generic name <i>Bacterium</i> Ehrenberg 1828 is to be recognized as a <i>nomen generis rejiciendum</i> (rejected generic name). (2) The bacterial family name <i>Bacteriaceae</i> is to be recognized as a <i>nomen familiae rejiciendum</i> (rejected family name).
5	Conservation of the generic name <i>Pseudomonas</i> Migula 1894 and designation of <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (Schroeter) Migula 1900 as type species	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1952;2:121–122	(1) The generic name <i>Pseudomonas</i> Migula 1894 is to be conserved and placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i> . (2) The generic name <i>Pseudomonas</i> Migula 1894 is to be associated with the species designated and described by Migula 1895. (3) The type species of the genus <i>Pseudomonas</i> Migula 1894 is <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (Schroeter) Migula 1900 (<i>Bacterium aeruginosum</i> Schroeter 1872, <i>Bacillus pyocyaneus</i> Gessard 1882, <i>Pseudomonas pyocyanea</i> Migula 1895).
6	Conservation of the generic name <i>Chlorobacterium</i>	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:143	The bacterial generic name <i>Chlorobacterium</i> Lauterborn 1916 is conserved against the earlier homonym <i>Chlorobacterium</i> Guillebeau 1890. The generic name <i>Chlorobacterium</i> Guillebeau 1890 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum rejicienda</i> .

	Lauterborn 1916 against <i>Chlorobacterium</i> Guillebeau 1890		
7	Nomenclature of the organism associated with granuloma venereum	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:144, synonymy of <i>Calymmatobacterium granulomatis</i> Aragão and Vianna 1913	The bacterial species names <i>Encapsulatus inguinalis</i> Bergey et al. 1923, <i>Klebsiella granulomatis</i> Bergey et al. 1925, <i>Donovania granulomatis</i> Anderson, de Monbreun, and Goodpasture 1944 are later synonyms of <i>Calymmatobacterium granulomatis</i> Aragão and Vianna 1913.
8	The correct species name of the streptococcus of bovine mastitis	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:145–146, conservation of the specific epithet <i>agalactiae</i> in the combination <i>Streptococcus agalactiae</i> Lehmann and Neumann 1896	The species name <i>Streptococcus agalactiae</i> Lehmann and Neumann 1896 is conserved against all synonyms having priority.
9	Conservation of the bacterial generic name <i>Gallionella</i>	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:146–147, conservation of <i>Gallionella Ehrenberg</i> 1838, with type species <i>Gallionella ferruginea</i> Ehrenberg	<i>Gallionella</i> Ehrenberg is placed in the list of conserved names of bacterial genera (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>) with the type species <i>Gallionella ferruginea</i> Ehrenberg.
10	Invalidity of the bacterial generic name <i>Müllerina</i> de Petschenko 1910 and	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:147–148, and status of <i>Drepanospira</i> de Petschenko 1911	The generic name <i>Müllerina</i> de Petschenko 1910 and the species name <i>Müllerina paramecii</i> de Petschenko 1910 were not accepted by the author, hence were not validly published and are without standing in nomenclature. The later names

	of the species name <i>Müllerina paramecia</i>	and <i>Drepanospira muelleri</i> de Petschenko 1911	<i>Drepanospira</i> de Petschenko 1911 and <i>Drepanospira muelleri</i> de Petschenko 1911 were validly published and are not later synonyms.
11	Nomenclature of species in the bacterial genus <i>Shigella</i>	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:148–150, validity of publication of the names <i>Shigella</i> <i>dysenteriae</i> (Shiga) Castellani and Chalmers 1919, and conservation of the specific epithets <i>flexneri</i> , <i>boydii</i> , and <i>sonnei</i> in, respectively, the species names <i>Shigella flexneri</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919, <i>Shigella boydii</i> Ewing 1949, and <i>Shigella sonnei</i> (Levine) Weldin 1927, and emendation, <i>Int Bull</i> <i>Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1960;10:85 and 1963;13:31	(1) <i>Shigella dysenteriae</i> (Shiga) Castellani and Chalmers 1919 was validly published and is legitimate as the name of the bacterium described by Shiga (1898). (2) The specific epithet <i>flexneri</i> in the species name <i>Shigella flexneri</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 is designated as a conserved specific epithet (<i>epitheton specificum conservandum</i>) for the species first described as <i>Bacillus dysenteriae</i> Flexner 1900. (3) The species name <i>Shigella boydii</i> Ewing 1949 was validly published and is legitimate. The specific epithet <i>boydii</i> in the species name <i>Shigella boydii</i> is to be conserved (<i>epitheton specificum conservandum</i>). (4) The species name <i>Shigella sonnei</i> (Levine) Weldin 1927 was validly published and is legitimate. The specific epithet <i>sonnei</i> in the species name <i>Shigella sonnei</i> is to be conserved (<i>epitheton specificum conservandum</i>). (5) A type or standard culture is to be designated by the <i>Enterobacteriaceae</i> Subcommittee on Bacteriological Nomenclature for each of the four species. Such cultures as far as possible shall be maintained in each of the national Type Culture Collections and in the International Shigella Center, Chamblee, Georgia, U.S.A. (<i>now in the Centers for Disease Control, Atlanta, Georgia</i>). (6) A culture belonging to the species <i>Shigella dysenteriae</i> , <i>Shigella flexneri</i> , <i>Shigella boydii</i> , or <i>Shigella sonnei</i> may be completely identified by appending the appropriate serotype number (arabic) to the name.

12	Conservation of <i>Listeria</i> Pirie 1940 as a generic name in bacteriology	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:150–151, type species <i>Listeria monocytogenes</i> (Murray, Webb, and Swann) Pirie 1940	<i>Listeria</i> Pirie 1940 (type species <i>Listeria monocytogenes</i> (Murray, Webb, and Swann) Pirie 1940) shall be placed in the list of conserved names of bacterial genera (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>).
13	Conservation and rejection of names of genera of bacteria proposed by Trevisan 1842–1890	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:151–156, conservation of generic names <i>Beggiatoa</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Kurthia</i> , <i>Leptotrichia</i> , <i>Neisseria</i> , <i>Nocardia</i> , <i>Pasteurella</i> ; rejection of generic names <i>Babesia</i> , <i>Bacteriopsis</i> , <i>Billetia</i> , <i>Cenomesia</i> , <i>Cornilia</i> , <i>Dicoccia</i> , <i>Eucornilia</i> , <i>Eumantegazzaea</i> , <i>Eupacinia</i> , <i>Euspirillum</i> , <i>Leptotrichiella</i> , <i>Mantegazzaea</i> , <i>Octopsis</i> , <i>Perroncitoa</i> , <i>Pleurospora</i> , <i>Pseudospira</i> , <i>Pseudospirillum</i> ; illegitimate generic names <i>Bollingeria</i> , <i>Rasmussenia</i> , <i>Schuetzia</i> ,	1. Generic names proposed by Trevisan placed in the list of conserved generic names (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>). Names of genera and subgenera Type species [SEE HERE THE LAYOUT OF THE TABLE IN THE 2008 VERSION] <i>Beggiatoa</i> Trevisan 1842 (p. 56) <i>Beggiatoa alba</i> (Vaucher) Trevisan 1845 (<i>Oscillatoria alba</i> Vaucher 1803) <i>Klebsiella</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 105) <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> (Schroeter) Trevisan 1887 (<i>Bacterium pneumoniae crouposae</i> Zopf 1885) <i>Kurthia</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 92) <i>Kurthia zopfii</i> (Kurth) Trevisan 1885 (<i>Bacterium zopfii</i> Kurth 1883) <i>Leptotrichia</i> Trevisan 1879 (p. 138)

		<p><i>Winogradskya</i>; of indeterminate status, <i>Gaffkya</i>, <i>Pacinia</i></p>	<p><i>Leptotrichia buccalis</i> (Robin) Trevisan 1879 (<i>Leptothrix buccalis</i> Robin 1853)</p> <p><i>Neisseria</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 105)</p> <p><i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> Trevisan 1885</p> <p>This generic name was omitted in error in the published Opinion and authority is <i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1953;3:141–154 (1953, Minute 7, File 56) and <i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1953;3:87–100.</p> <p><i>Pasteurella</i> Trevisan 1887 (p. 94)</p> <p><i>Pasteurella choleraegallinarum</i> Trevisan 1887 (but see Opinion 58)</p> <p>2. Generic names proposed by Trevisan placed in the list of rejected generic names (<i>nomina generum rejicienda</i>).</p> <p>Names of genera and subgenera Type species</p> <p><i>Babesia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 29)</p> <p><i>Babesia xanthopyrethica</i> (sic) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Streptococcus xanthopyreticus</i> Trevisan 1887)</p> <p><i>Bacteriopsis</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 103)</p>
--	--	---	---

			<p><i>Bacteriopsis rasmussenii</i> Trevisan 1885 (Leptothrix I Rasmussen 1883)</p> <p><i>Billetia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 11)</p> <p><i>Billetia laminariae</i> (Billet) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacterium laminariae</i> Billet 1888)</p> <p><i>Cenomesia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 1039)</p> <p><i>Cenomesia albida</i> Trevisan 1889</p> <p><i>Cornilia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 21)</p> <p><i>Cornilia alvei</i> (Flügge) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus alvei</i> Flügge 1886)</p> <p><i>Dicoccia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 26)</p> <p><i>Dicoccia glossophila</i> Trevisan 1889</p> <p><i>Eucornilia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 21) (Subgenus)</p> <p><i>Cornilia (Eucornilia) alvei</i> Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus alvei</i> Cheshire and Cheyne 1885)</p> <p><i>Eumantegazzaea</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 942) (Subgenus)</p> <p><i>Mantegazzaea (Eumantegazzaea) I cienkowskii</i> Trevisan 1879</p> <p><i>Eupacinia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 23) (Subgenus)</p> <p><i>Pacinia (Eupacinia) putrifica</i> Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus putrificus coli</i> Flügge 1886)</p>
--	--	--	---

			<p><i>Euspirillum</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 24) Subgenus <i>Spirillum (Euspirillum) undula</i> (Mueller) Ehrenberg 1830 (<i>Vibrio undula</i> Mueller 1773)</p> <p><i>Leptotrichiella</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 935) (Subgenus) <i>Leptotrichia (Leptotrichiella) amphibola</i> Trevisan 1889</p> <p><i>Mantegazzaea</i> Trevisan 1879 (p. 137) <i>Mantagazzaea cienkowskii</i> Trevisan 1879</p> <p><i>Octopsis</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 102) <i>Octopsis choleraegallinarum</i> Trevisan 1885 (<i>Micrococcus cholerae-gallinarum</i> Zopf 1885)</p> <p><i>Perroncitoa</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 29) <i>Perroncitoa scarlatinosa</i> (Trevisan) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Micrococcus scarlatinus</i> Trevisan 1879)</p> <p><i>Pleurospora</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 22) (Subgenus) <i>Cornilia (Pleurospora) tremula</i> (Koch) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Bacillus tremulus</i> Koch 1877)</p>
--	--	--	--

			<p><i>Pseudospira</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 23) (Subgenus) <i>Pacinia (Pseudospira) cholerae-asiaticae</i> Trevisan 1885 (<i>Vibrio cholera</i> Pacini 1854)</p> <p><i>Pseudospirillum</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 25) (Subgenus) <i>Spirillum (Pseudospirillum) amphibolum</i> Trevisan 1889</p> <p>3. Trevisan's generic names which, as later homonyms or synonyms, are regarded as illegitimate.</p> <p>Names of genera and subgenera Type species</p> <p><i>Bollingera</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 26) <i>Bollingera equi</i> (Rivolta) Trevisan (1889) (<i>Zoogloea pulmonis equi</i> Bollinger 1870)</p> <p><i>Rasmussenia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 930) <i>Rasmussenia buccalis</i> (Robin) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Leptothrix buccalis</i> Robin 1853)</p> <p><i>Schuetzia</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 29) <i>Schuetzia poelsii</i> Trevisan 1889 (<i>Streptococcus equi</i> Sand and Jensen 1888)</p> <p><i>Winogradskya</i> Trevisan 1889 (p. 12)</p>
--	--	--	--

			<p><i>Winogradskya ramigera</i> (Itzigsohn) Trevisan 1889 (<i>Zoogloea ramigera</i> Itzigsohn 1867)</p> <p>4. Trevisan's generic names whose status is indeterminate.</p> <p>Names of genera and subgenera Type species</p> <p><i>Gaffkya</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 105); but see Opinion 39 <i>Gaffkya tetragena</i> (Gaffky) Trevisan 1885 (<i>Micrococcus tetragenus</i> Gaffky 1883)</p> <p><i>Pacinia</i> Trevisan 1885 (p. 83); but see Opinion 31 <i>Pacinia choleraeasiaticae</i> Trevisan 1885</p>
14	Names of bacterial genera to be rejected as later synonyms of names of genera of protozoa	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1954;4:156–158, rejection of <i>Astasia</i> Meyer 1897, <i>Astasia</i> Pribram 1929, <i>Castellanella</i> Pacheco and Rodrigues 1930, Charon Holmes 1948, <i>Coccomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1921, <i>Listerella</i> Pirie, 1927, <i>Palmula</i> Prévot 1938, <i>Pfeifferella</i> Buchanan 1918, <i>Phytomonas</i> Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923,</p>	<p>The following names proposed for bacterial genera are found to be later homonyms of names applied to genera of protozoa. Rule 24 of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (new Rule 51b) states that such later homonyms are illegitimate in bacteriology. These names are to be placed in the list of names of bacterial genera to be rejected (<i>nomina generum bacteriorum rejicienda</i>).</p> <p>Rejected names of bacterial genera [COLUMN SUBHEADING] Names of protozoan genera having priority [COLUMN SUBHEADING]</p>

		<i>Rhizomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1909, <i>Rhodospira</i> Buchanan 1918	<i>Astasia</i> Meyer 1897 <i>Astasia</i> Ehrenberg 1830 <i>Astasia</i> Pribram 1929 <i>Castellanella</i> Pacheco and Rodrigues 1930 <i>Castellanella</i> Chalmers 1918 <i>Charon</i> Holmes 1948 (a genus of viruses) <i>Charon</i> Karsch 1879 <i>Coccomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1921 <i>Coccomonas</i> Stein 1878 <i>Listerella</i> Pirie 1927 <i>Listerella</i> Jahn 1906 <i>Palmula</i> Prévot <i>Palmula</i> Lea 1833 <i>Pfeifferella</i> Buchanan 1918 <i>Pfeifferella</i> Labbé 1899
--	--	--	---

			<p><i>Phytomonas</i> Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923</p> <p><i>Phytomonas</i> Donovan 1909</p> <p><i>Rhizomonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1909</p> <p><i>Rhizomonas</i> Kent 1880</p> <p><i>Rhodosphaera</i> Buchanan 1918</p> <p><i>Rhodosphaera</i> Haeckel 1881</p>
15	<p>Conservation of the family name <i>Enterobacteriaceae</i>, of the name of the type genus, and designation of the type species</p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:73–74, with type genus <i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 as conserved generic name and type species <i>Escherichia coli</i> (Migula) Castellani and Chalmers 1919</p>	<p>(1) The family name <i>Enterobacteriaceae</i> Rahn 1937 (p. 280) is placed in the list of family names (<i>nomina conservanda familiarum</i>).</p> <p>(2) The genus <i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 (p. 941) is designated as the type genus of the family <i>Enterobacteriaceae</i> Rahn 1937.</p> <p>(3) The generic name <i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 (p. 941) is placed in the list of conserved generic names (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>).</p> <p>(4) The type species of the genus <i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919 [p. 941 is <i>Escherichia coli</i> (Migula) Castellani and Chalmers 1919 p. 941], basonym <i>Bacillus coli</i> Migula 1895 (p. 27); hyponym <i>Bacterium coli commune</i> Escherich 1885 (p. 518).</p>
16	<p>Conservation of the generic name <i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1880 and</p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:151–152</p>	<p>(1) The generic name <i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1879 is rejected and placed in the list of <i>nomina generum rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>(2) The generic name <i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1880 is conserved and placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i>.</p>

	designation of the type species and the neotype culture of the type species		<p>(3) The type species of the genus <i>Chromobacterium</i> Bergonzini 1880 is <i>Chromobacterium violaceum</i> Bergonzini 1880.</p> <p>(4) A neotype strain of <i>Chromobacterium violaceum</i> Bergonzini 1880 is designated and has been deposited in the American Type Culture Collection, Washington, D.C. (ATCC 12472) and in the National Collection of Type Cultures, London (NCTC 9757).</p>
17	<p>Conservation of the generic name <i>Staphylococcus</i> Rosenbach, designation of <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> as the nomenclatural type of the genus <i>Staphylococcus</i> Rosenbach, and designation of a neotype culture of <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Rosenbach</p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:153–154</p>	<p>(1) The generic name <i>Staphylococcus</i> Rosenbach 1884 is conserved and placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i>.</p> <p>(2) <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Rosenbach 1884 is recognized as the nomenclatural type species of the genus <i>Staphylococcus</i> Rosenbach 1884.</p> <p>(3) The strain labeled NCTC 8532 in the National Collection of Type Cultures, London, is designated as the neotype strain of the species <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Rosenbach 1884.</p>
18	<p>Conservation of <i>typhi</i> in the binary combination <i>Salmonella typhi</i></p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:31–33, see also 1958;8:158–159</p>	<p>The specific epithet <i>typhi</i> in the name of the species <i>Salmonella typhi</i> (Schroeter) Warren and Scott is conserved over the specific epithet <i>typhosa</i> in the name of the</p>

			species <i>Salmonella typhosa</i> (Zopf) White 1930, with the recognition of <i>Bacillus typhi</i> Schroeter 1886 as the basonym.
19	Conservation of the generic name <i>Rickettsia</i> da Rocha-Lima and of the species name <i>Rickettsia prowazekii</i> da Rocha-Lima	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:158–159	The generic name <i>Rickettsia</i> da Rocha-Lima is conserved against <i>Stricheria</i> Stempell, and the specific epithet <i>prowazekii</i> in the species name <i>Rickettsia prowazekii</i> da Rocha-Lima is conserved against the specific epithet <i>jurgensi</i> first used in the species name <i>Stricheria jurgensi</i> Stempell.
20	Status of new generic names of bacteria published without names of included species	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:160–162	<p>(1) <i>Name of a hypothetical genus.</i> A hypothetical genus is one in which no species is described, named, or cited; the existence of the genus is predicated upon the future discovery and description of species as yet unknown. A name applied to a hypothetical genus is not validly published and is to be placed in the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>(2) <i>Name of a “temporary” genus.</i> A generic name proposed for a genus whose sole function is stated to be to serve as the temporary generic haven for insufficiently described species, which species may be allocated later to an appropriate genus or genera, is to be regarded as not validly published. Such a name may be placed in the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>(3) <i>Name of a new genus with a described species which is neither named nor identified with a previously named species.</i> A new generic name published in a combined description of a genus and species, without the species being named, without citation of a previously and effectively published description of the species,</p>

			<p>and without subsequent acceptance of the generic name and naming of the species by a later author, should be regarded as not validly published. Such a generic name may be placed in the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>However, if a later author has recognized the generic name and has used it with a specific epithet in naming the species described by the first author, particularly if there has been later general acceptance of the name, there may be validation of the generic name as proposed by its author, with the name of the species ascribed to the later author who gave it. Proposals for such validations of names should be made to the Judicial Commission for appropriate action.</p> <p>(4) <i>Name of a new genus proposed to include one or more previously described and named species, but without simultaneous publication of the new binary combination of generic name and specific epithet.</i> A published generic name applied to a new genus in which the generic name is not used in a binary combination in naming any species, but in which there is citation of a previously and effectively published description of a species under another name, is to be regarded as validly published and the consequent <i>combinationes novae</i> ascribed likewise to the author of the generic name.</p>
21	<p>Conservation of the generic name <i>Selenomonas</i> von Prowazek</p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:163–165, with type species <i>Selenomonas sputigena</i> (Flügge) Boskamp 1922</p>	<p>(1) The generic name <i>Selenomonas</i> von Prowazek 1913 was validly published with an accompanying description of the genus.</p> <p>(2) The species <i>Spirillum sputigenum</i> Flügge 1886 was characterized and adequate references to description given. The species was assigned to the genus <i>Selenomonas</i>.</p>

			<p>(3) <i>Selenomonas sputigena</i> (Flügge) Boskamp 1922 (basonym <i>Spirillum sputigenum</i> Flügge) is designated as the type species of <i>Selenomonas</i> von Prowazek.</p> <p>(4) The generic name <i>Selenomonas</i> von Prowazek 1913 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i>.</p>
22	Status of the generic name <i>Asterococcus</i> and conservation of the generic name <i>Mycoplasma</i>	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:166–168, illegitimacy of <i>Asterococcus</i> Borrel <i>et al.</i> 1910, conservation of <i>Mycoplasma</i> Nowak 1929 with type species <i>Mycoplasma mycoides</i> (Borrel <i>et al.</i>) Freundt 1955	<p>(1) The generic name <i>Asterococcus</i> Borrel, Dujardin-Beaumetz, Jeantet, and Jouan 1910 is a later homonym of <i>Asterococcus</i> Scherffel 1908 and hence illegitimate.</p> <p>(2) The generic name <i>Mycoplasma</i> Nowak 1929 is placed in the list of bacterial <i>nomina generum conservanda</i> as the first legitimate generic name proposed to replace <i>Asterococcus</i> Borrel <i>et al.</i> The type species is <i>Mycoplasma mycoides</i> (Borrel <i>et al.</i>) Freundt 1955 (basonym <i>Asterococcus mycoides</i> Borrel <i>et al.</i>).</p>
23	Rejection of the generic names <i>Nitromonas</i> Winogradsky 1890 and <i>Nitromonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1909, conservation of the generic names <i>Nitrosomonas</i> Winogradsky 1892, <i>Nitrosococcus</i> Winogradsky 1892, and <i>Nitrobacter</i> Winogradsky	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:169–170, type species are respectively <i>Nitrosomonas europaea</i> Winogradsky 1892, <i>Nitrosococcus nitrosus</i> (Migula) Buchanan 1925, and <i>Nitrobacter winogradskyi</i> Winslow <i>et al.</i> 1917	<p>(1) The generic name <i>Nitromonas</i> Winogradsky 1890 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>(2) The generic name <i>Nitromonas</i> Orla-Jensen 1909 is a later homonym of <i>Nitromonas</i> Winogradsky 1890 and a later synonym of <i>Nitrobacter</i> Winogradsky (1892). It is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum rejicienda</i>.</p> <p>(3) The generic name <i>Nitrosomonas</i> Winogradsky 1892 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i> with <i>Nitrosomonas europaea</i> Winogradsky 1892 as the nomenclatural type species.</p> <p>(4) The generic name <i>Nitrosococcus</i> Winogradsky 1892 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i>, with the species described by Winogradsky and</p>

	1892, and the designation of the type species of these genera		later named <i>Nitrosococcus nitrosus</i> (Migula) Buchanan 1925 as the nomenclatural type species. (5) The generic name <i>Nitrobacter</i> Winogradsky 1892 is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum conservanda</i> , with the species described by Winogradsky and later named <i>Nitrobacter winogradskyi</i> Winslow <i>et al.</i> 1917 as the nomenclatural type species.
24	Rejection of the generic name <i>Arthrobacter</i> Fischer 1895 and conservation of the generic name <i>Arthrobacter</i> Conn and Dimmick 1947	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1958;8:171–172, conservation was effected though its mention was omitted in the Opinion itself. The title of the Opinion explicitly states that <i>Arthrobacter</i> Conn and Dimmick is conserved.	(1) The name <i>Arthrobacter</i> proposed by Fischer in 1895 as the name of a hypothetical genus of bacteria was not validly published and has no standing in nomenclature. (2) The generic name <i>Arthrobacter</i> Conn and Dimmick 1947 was validly published as a <i>nomen novum</i> . It is not an emendation of <i>Arthrobacter</i> Fischer 1895 nor a later homonym.
25	Rejection of names of bacteria in certain publications of Trécul, Hallier, Billroth, and Ogston	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:33–35	(1) The specific, subgeneric, generic or other names proposed in the several publications listed below were not validly published as names of taxa of bacteria and have no standing in bacteriological nomenclature. These publications are included in the list of Rejected Publications as authorized in Paragraph 8 under “Functions of the Judicial Commission,” in Section IV of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> : (a) Trécul A. Production de plantules amylières dans les cellules végétales pendant la putréfaction. Chlorophylle cristallisée. C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris 1865;61:432–436.

			<p>(b₁) Hallier, Ernst. Die pflanzlichen Parasiten des menschlichen Körpers für Aerzte, Botaniker und Studierende zugleich als Einleitung in das Stadium der niederen Organismen. Leipzig; 1866.</p> <p>(b₂) Hallier, Ernst. Mikroskopische Untersuchungen. Zwei neue Untersuchungen über den <i>Micrococcus</i>. Flora N.S. 1868;26:654–657.</p> <p>(b₃) Hallier E. Mykologische Untersuchungen. III. Untersuchungen der Parasiten beim Tripper, beim weichen Schanker, bei der Syphilis und bei der Rotzkrankheit der Pferde. Flora N.S. 1868;26:289–301.</p> <p>(b₄) Hallier, Ernst. Die Parasiten der Infektionskrankheiten. <i>Z Parasitenkd</i> 1870;2:113–132.</p> <p>(c) Billroth CAT. Untersuchungen über die Vegetationsformen von <i>Coccobacteria septica</i>. Berlin; 1874</p> <p>(d1) Ogston, Alex. Micrococcus poisoning. <i>J Anat Physiol</i> 1882;16:526–567.</p> <p>(d2) Ogston, Alex. Micrococcus poisoning (cont.). <i>J Anat Physiol</i> 1883;17:24–58.</p> <p>(2) Names proposed in the above-listed publications of Trécul, Hallier, Billroth, and Ogston have in some cases been adopted by later authors as the names of bacterial taxa and one or other of the four authors named cited as author. In such cases the name of the taxon is to be ascribed to the first subsequent authors whose publication meets the requirements of valid publication as prescribed in the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses</i> (Rule 11 [now Rule 27]).</p>
--	--	--	---

26	<p>Designation of neotype strains (cultures) of type species of the bacterial genera <i>Salmonella</i>, <i>Shigella</i>, <i>Arizona</i>, <i>Escherichia</i>, <i>Citrobacter</i>, and <i>Proteus</i> of the family <i>Enterobacteriaceae</i></p>	<p><i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:35–36, and 1864;14:57</p>	<p>Neotype cultures of <i>Salmonella cholerae-suis</i>, <i>S. typhi-murium</i>, <i>Shigella dysenteriae</i>, <i>Arizona arizonae</i>, <i>Escherichia coli</i>, <i>Citrobacter freundii</i>, and <i>Proteus vulgaris</i> were approved.</p> <p>Name of species Catalogue no. NCTC London ATCC Washington FOR THE CORRECT LAYOUT OF THE TABLE HERE SEE THE 2008 CODE</p> <p><i>Salmonella cholerae-suis</i> (sic) (Smith) Weldin 1927. Type species of genus <i>Salmonella</i> Lignières 1900. 5735 13312</p> <p><i>Salmonella typhi-murium</i> (sic) (Loeffler) Castellani and Chalmers 1919 74 13311</p> <p><i>Shigella dysenteriae</i> (Shiga) Castellani and Chalmers 1919. Type species of genus <i>Shigella</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919. 4837 13313</p> <p><i>Arizona arizonae</i> Kauffmann and Edwards 1952. Type species of genus <i>Arizona</i> Kauffmann and Edwards 1952. 8297 13314</p> <p><i>Escherichia coli</i> (Migula) Castellani and Chalmers 1919. Type species of genus <i>Escherichia</i> Castellani and Chalmers 1919. 9001 11775</p> <p><i>Citrobacter freundii</i> (Braak) Werkman and Gillen 1932. Type species of genus <i>Citrobacter</i> Werkman and Gillen 1932. 9750 8090</p> <p><i>Proteus vulgaris</i> Hauser 1885. Type species of genus <i>Proteus</i> Hauser 1885. 4175 13315</p>
----	---	--	---

27	Designation of the neotype strain of <i>Streptococcus agalactiae</i> Lehmann and Neumann	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:37	The strain Stableforth G19 is designated as the neotype strain of <i>Streptococcus agalactiae</i> Lehmann and Neumann. This neotype strain is catalogued in the National Collection of Type Cultures as NCTC 8181 and in the American Type Culture Collection as ATCC 13813.
28	Rejection of the bacterial generic name <i>Cloaca</i> Castellani and Chalmers and acceptance of <i>Enterobacter</i> Hormaeche and Edwards as a bacterial generic name with type species <i>Enterobacter cloacae</i> (Jordan) Hormaeche and Edwards	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:38, conservation was effected by statement in the Summary though omitted in the title and in the Opinion itself.	The generic name <i>Cloaca</i> Castellani and Chalmers is rejected and replaced by the generic name <i>Enterobacter</i> Hormaeche and Edwards with the type species <i>Enterobacter cloacae</i> (Jordan) Hormaeche and Edwards: the basonym is <i>Bacillus cloacae</i> Jordan.
29	Designation of strain ATCC 3004 (IMRU 3004) as the neotype strain of <i>Streptomyces albus</i> (Rossi Doria) Waksman and Henrici	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:123–124	The strain labeled ATCC 3004 in the American Type Culture Collection, Washington, D.C., and also known as IMRU 3004 (Institute of Microbiology, Rutgers University) is designated as the neotype strain of <i>Streptomyces albus</i> (Rossi Doria) Waksman and Henrici 1943.

30	Conservation of the specific epithet <i>faecalis</i> in the species name <i>Streptococcus faecalis</i> Andrewes and Horder 1906	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1963;13:167	The specific epithet <i>faecalis</i> in the species name <i>Streptococcus faecalis</i> Andrewes and Horder 1906 is conserved against the specific epithets in <i>Streptococcus liquefaciens</i> Sternberg 1892, <i>S. zymogenes</i> McCallum and Hastings 1899, and all other earlier synonymous specific epithets in the genus <i>Streptococcus</i> .
31	Conservation of <i>Vibrio</i> Pacini 1854 as a bacterial generic name, conservation of <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini 1854 as the nomenclatural type species of the bacterial genus <i>Vibrio</i> , and designation of neotype strain of <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini	<i>Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon</i> 1965;15:185–186	<i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini 1854 is conserved as the name of the type species of the bacterial genus <i>Vibrio</i> Pacini 1854, the bacterial generic name <i>Vibrio</i> Pacini 1854 is placed in the list of conserved bacterial generic names (<i>nomina generum conservanda</i>), and National Collection of Type Cultures NCTC 8021 (American Type Culture Collection, ATCC 14035) is designated as the neotype of the species <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> Pacini 1854.
32	Conservation of the specific epithet <i>rhusiopathiae</i> in the scientific name of the organism known as	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:9	The specific epithet <i>rhusiopathiae</i> in the scientific name of the organism known as <i>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</i> (Migula 1900) Buchanan 1918 is conserved against the specific epithet <i>insidiosa</i> (basonym <i>Bacillus insidiosus</i> Trevisan 1885) and against all other specific epithets applied to this organism.

	<i>Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae</i> (Migula 1900) Buchanan 1918		
33	Conservation of the generic name <i>Agrobacterium</i> Conn 1942	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:10, type species <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend) Conn 1942	The generic name <i>Agrobacterium</i> Conn 1942 is conserved against the name <i>Polymonas</i> Lieske 1928, which is placed in the list of <i>nomina generum rejicienda</i> . The type species, by original designation, is <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942: the basonym is <i>Bacterium tumefaciens</i> Smith and Townsend 1907.
34	Conservation of the generic name <i>Rhizobium</i> Frank 1889	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:11–12, type species <i>Rhizobium leguminosarum</i> Frank 1889	The generic name <i>Rhizobium</i> Frank 1889 is conserved against <i>Phytomyxa</i> Schroeter 1886 and all earlier synonyms. The type species is <i>Rhizobium leguminosarum</i> (Frank 1879) Frank 1889; the basonym is <i>Schinzia leguminosarum</i> Frank 1879.
35	Conservation of the specific epithet <i>meningitidis</i> in the scientific name of the meningococcus	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:13–14, and designation of neotype strain (genus is now <i>Neisseria</i>)	The specific epithet “ <i>meningitidis</i> ” is conserved in the scientific name of the meningococcus (<i>Diplococcus intracellularis meningitidis</i> Weichselbaum) against all earlier specific epithets. The neotype strain of this organism is ATCC 13077 (=Sara E. Branham M1027=NCTC 10025).
36	Designation of strain ATCC 10145 as the neotype strain of <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (Schroeter) Migula	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:15–16	The neotype strain of <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> (Schroeter) Migula is ATCC 10145=CCEB 481=IBCS 277=NCIB 8295=NCTC 10332=NRRL B-771=RH 815.

37	Designation of strain ATCC 13525 as the neotype strain of <i>Pseudomonas fluorescens</i> Migula	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1970;20:17–18	The neotype strain of <i>Pseudomonas fluorescens</i> Migula is ATCC 13525=CCEB 546=NCIB 9046=NCTC 10038=RH 818=M. Rhodes 28/5.
38	Conservation of the generic name <i>Lactobacillus</i> Beijerinck	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:104, with new type species <i>Lactobacillus delbrueckii</i> Beijerinck 1901 and neotype strain	The generic name <i>Lactobacillus</i> Beijerinck 1901 is conserved over <i>Saccharobacillus</i> van Laer 1892 and all earlier objective synonyms. The type species of this genus is <i>Lactobacillus delbrueckii</i> Beijerinck 1901, the neotype strain of which is ATCC 9649=NCDO213. The name <i>Lactobacillus delbrueckii</i> Beijerinck 1901, although used by Beijerinck as a simplified version of the subspecific name “ <i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> var. <i>delbrucki</i> ,” shall be held to be validly published by Beijerinck as a species name. The name <i>Lactobacillus caucasicus</i> Beijerinck 1901 is placed in the list of rejected names, and <i>L. caucasicus</i> ceases to be the type species of <i>Lactobacillus</i> Beijerinck.
39	Rejection of the generic name <i>Gaffkya</i> Trevisan	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:104–105	The generic name <i>Gaffkya</i> Trevisan 1885 is placed on the list of rejected names.
40	Rejection of the names <i>Mima</i> De Bord and <i>Herellea</i> De Bord and of the specific epithets <i>polymorpha</i> and <i>vaginicola</i> in <i>Mima</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:105–107, and loss of standing in nomenclature of the tribal name <i>Mimeae</i> De Bord 1939	The generic names <i>Mima</i> De Bord 1939, 1942 and <i>Herellea</i> De Bord 1942 are placed on the list of rejected names. The specific epithets <i>polymorpha</i> and <i>vaginicola</i> in <i>Mima polymorpha</i> De Bord 1939, 1942 and <i>Herellea vaginicola</i> De Bord 1942 respectively are placed on the list of rejected epithets. The tribal name <i>Mimeae</i> De Bord 1939, 1942 therefore loses its standing in nomenclature.

	<i>polymorpha</i> De Bord and <i>Herellea vaginicola</i> De Bord, respectively		
41	Conservation of the generic name <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:106, type species <i>Moraxella lacunata</i> (Eyre) Lwoff 1939, and neotype strain	The generic name <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939 is conserved over <i>Diplobacillus</i> McNab 1904 and over all earlier objective synonyms. The type species is <i>Moraxella lacunata</i> (Eyre) Lwoff 1939, and the neotype strain of this species is Morax =ATCC 17967.
42	Conservation of the specific epithet " <i>phenylpyruvica</i> " in the name <i>Moraxella phenylpyruvica</i> Bøvre and Henriksen	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:107, conservation over epithet <i>polymorpha</i> in the name <i>Moraxella polymorpha</i> Flamm 1957, and neotype strain	The specific epithet " <i>phenylpyruvica</i> " in the name <i>Moraxella phenylpyruvica</i> Bøvre and Henriksen 1967 is conserved against the specific epithet " <i>polymorpha</i> " in the name of the earlier objective synonym <i>Moraxella polymorpha</i> Flamm 1957 and against the specific epithets in all other earlier objective synonyms. The neotype strain of <i>Moraxella phenylpyruvica</i> is 2863 (=ATCC 23333 = NCTC 10526).
43	Conservation of the specific epithet " <i>sphaeroides</i> " in the name <i>Rhodopseudomonas sphaeroides</i> van Niel	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:108, and neotype strain	The specific epithet " <i>sphaeroides</i> " in the name <i>Rhodopseudomonas sphaeroides</i> van Niel 1944 is conserved against the specific epithet " <i>minor</i> " in the name of the earlier subjective synonym <i>Rhodococcus minor</i> and against the specific epithets in the names of all earlier objective synonyms of <i>Rhodopseudomonas sphaeroides</i> . The neotype strain is van Niel's ATH 2.4.1 (=ATCC 17023).
44	Validation of the generic name <i>Chloropseudomonas</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:109, type species <i>Chloropseudomonas ethylica</i> Shaposhnikov <i>et al.</i> 1960	The generic name <i>Chloropseudomonas</i> is held to be validly published by Czurda and Maresch 1937. The type species is <i>Chloropseudomonas ethylica</i> Shaposhnikov, Kondratieva, and Fedorov 1960.

	Czurda and Maresch 1937 and designation of the type species		
45	Rejection of the name <i>Leuconostoc citrovorum</i> (Hammer) Hucker and Pederson	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:109– 110	The name <i>Leuconostoc citrovorum</i> (Hammer 1920) Hucker and Pederson 1931, together with its objective synonyms, is regarded as a <i>nomen dubium</i> and is placed on the list of rejected names.
46	Rejection of the generic name <i>Aerobacter</i> Beijerinck	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1971;21:110	The generic name <i>Aerobacter</i> Beijerinck 1900 is regarded as a <i>nomen ambiguum</i> and is placed on the list of rejected generic names.
47	Conservation of the specific epithet <i>avium</i> in the scientific name of the agent of avian tuberculosis	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1973;23:472	The specific epithet <i>avium</i> is conserved against the specific epithet <i>tuberculosis-gallinarum</i> and all earlier objective synonyms in the scientific name of the agent of avian tuberculosis. The name <i>Mycobacterium avium</i> shall be held to be validly published by Chester in 1901. The neotype strain of <i>M. avium</i> Chester is ATCC 25291.
48	Rejection of the name <i>Aerobacter liquefaciens</i> Beijerinck and conservation of the name <i>Aeromonas</i> Stanier with <i>Aeromonas</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1973;23:473– 474	The name <i>Aerobacter liquefaciens</i> Beijerinck 1900 is a <i>nomen dubium</i> and, together with all objective synonyms of this name, is placed on the list of rejected names. The generic name <i>Aeromonas</i> Stanier 1943, with type species <i>Aeromonas hydrophila</i> (Chester 1901) Stanier 1943, is conserved. The name <i>Aeromonas</i> is not to be attributed to Kluver and van Niel. The neotype strain of <i>A. hydrophila</i> is ATCC 7966.

	<i>hydrophila</i> as the type species		
49	Conservation of the generic name <i>Rhodopseudomonas</i> Czurda and Maresch emend. van Niel	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1974;24:551	The generic name <i>Rhodopseudomonas</i> Czurda and Maresch 1937 emend. van Niel 1944 is conserved over all earlier objective synonyms; the type species is <i>Rhodopseudomonas palustris</i> (Molisch 1907) van Niel 1944 (basonym <i>Rhodobacillus palustris</i> Molisch 1907).
50	Conservation of the epithet <i>fermentum</i> in the combination <i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> Beijerinck	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1974;24:551–552	The species name <i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> Beijerinck 1901 shall be held to be validly published by Beijerinck 1901 as the name of a bacterial species, and the epithet <i>fermentum</i> in the combination <i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> Beijerinck 1901 is conserved over the epithets in all other objective synonyms. The neotype strain of <i>Lactobacillus fermentum</i> is ATCC 4931.
51	Conservation of the epithet <i>fortuitum</i> in the combination <i>Mycobacterium fortuitum</i> da Costa Cruz	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1974;25:552	The specific epithet <i>fortuitum</i> in the name <i>Mycobacterium fortuitum</i> da Costa Cruz 1938 is conserved against the epithet <i>ranae</i> in the subjective synonym <i>Mycobacterium ranae</i> Bergey <i>et al.</i> 1923 and against the specific epithets in the names of all objective synonyms of <i>Mycobacterium fortuitum</i> and <i>Mycobacterium ranae</i> . The type strain of <i>Mycobacterium fortuitum</i> is ATCC 6841.
52	Conservation of the generic name <i>Pediococcus</i> Claussen with the type species	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1976;26:292, replacement of type species <i>P. cerevisiae</i> by <i>P. damnosus</i>	The generic name <i>Pediococcus</i> Claussen 1903 is conserved over <i>Pediococcus</i> Balcke 1884 and all earlier objective synonyms. The type species is <i>Pediococcus damnosus</i> Claussen 1903, and the neotype strain is Be.I (=NCDO 1832). <i>Pediococcus</i> Balcke 1884 and the species name <i>Pediococcus cerevisiae</i> Balcke 1884 are not validly published.

	<i>Pediococcus damnosus</i> Claussen		
53	Rejection of the species name <i>Mycobacterium marianum</i> Penso 1953	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1978;28:334, confusion between the epithets <i>marianum</i> and <i>marinum</i>	The species name <i>Mycobacterium marianum</i> Penso 1953 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> as a <i>nomen perplexum</i> because it is a source of confusion.
54	Rejection of the species name <i>Pseudomonas denitrificans</i> (Christensen) Bergey et al. 1923	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1982;32:466	The species name <i>Pseudomonas denitrificans</i> (Christensen) Bergey et al. 1923 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> as a <i>nomen ambiguum</i> because it is a source of confusion.
55	Rejection of the species name <i>Mycobacterium aquae</i> Jenkins et al. 1972	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1982;32:467	The species name <i>Mycobacterium aquae</i> Jenkins et al. 1972 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> as a <i>nomen ambiguum</i> because it is a source of confusion.
56	Rejection of the species name <i>Peptococcus anaerobius</i> (Hamm) Douglas 1957	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1982;32:468	The species name <i>Peptococcus anaerobius</i> (Hamm) Douglas 1957 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> as a <i>nomen dubium</i> and a <i>nomen perplexum</i> because it is a source of confusion.
57	Designation of <i>Eubacterium limosum</i> (Eggerth) Prévot 1938 as	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1983;33:434, replacement of type species <i>E. foedans</i> by <i>E. limosum</i>	The type species of the genus <i>Eubacterium</i> Prévot 1938 is designated <i>E. limosum</i> (Eggerth) Prévot 1938 (type strain, ATCC 8486).

	the type species of <i>Eubacterium</i>		
58	Confirmation of the type species in the Approved Lists as nomenclatural types including recognition of <i>Nocardia asteroides</i> (Eppinger 1891) Blanchard 1896 and <i>Pasteurella multocida</i> (Lehmann and Neumann 1899) Rosenbusch and Marchant 1939 as the respective type species of the genera <i>Nocardia</i> and <i>Pasteurella</i> and rejection of the type species name <i>Pasteurella gallicida</i> (Burrill 1883) Buchanan 1925	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1985;35:538, confirmation of new type species for <i>Nocardia</i> and <i>Pasteurella</i> (see Opinion 13) and rejection of <i>P. gallicida</i> as an objective synonym of <i>P. multocida</i> (<i>Editorial Note</i> : As stated in the title and summary, the Opinion also confirms the nomenclatural types in the Approved Lists, but without prejudice to the powers of the Judicial Commission to amend them.)	The names (<i>Editorial Note</i> . This should read “The types.”) of the bacterial taxa cited in the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names are formally and explicitly confirmed as correct and supersede any others in use before the appearance of the lists but without prejudice to the powers of the Judicial Commission to amend them. The species names <i>Nocardia asteroides</i> (Eppinger 1891) Blanchard 1896 and <i>Pasteurella multocida</i> (Lehmann and Neumann 1899) Rosenbusch and Marchant 1939 are the valid type species of their respective genera, thus reversing those elements of Opinion 13 that apply to these two genera. The species name <i>Pasteurella gallicida</i> (Burrill 1883) Buchanan 1925 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> .

59	Designation of NCIB 11664 in place of ATCC 23767 (NCIB 4112) as the type strain of <i>Acetobacter aceti</i> subsp. <i>xylinum</i> (sic) (Brown 1886) De Ley and Frateur 1974	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1985;35:539. The epithet <i>xylinum</i> should be spelled <i>xylinus</i> (see Opinion 3).	The type strain of <i>Acetobacter aceti</i> subsp. <i>xylinus</i> is NCIB 11664 (=NCIB 4112B) not ATCC 23767 (=NCIB 4112=NCIB 11301=CIP 57.14).
60	Rejection of the name <i>Yersinia pseudotuberculosis</i> subsp. <i>pestis</i> (van Loghem) Bercovier <i>et al.</i> 1981 and conservation of the name <i>Yersinia pestis</i> (Lehmann and Neumann) van Loghem 1944 for the plague bacillus	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1985;35:540, see also Rule 56a(5)	The name <i>Yersinia pseudotuberculosis</i> subsp. <i>pestis</i> (van Loghem) Bercovier <i>et al.</i> 1981 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> because the use of the name could have serious consequences for human welfare and health. The name <i>Yersinia pestis</i> is conserved for the plague bacillus. The opinion does not challenge the scientific evidence, which indicates the taxonomic relatedness of bacteria named <i>Yersinia pestis</i> and <i>Yersinia pseudotuberculosis</i> .
61	Rejection of the type strain of <i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> (ATCC 27377)	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1986;36:119	Strain ATCC 27377 is rejected as the type strain of the species <i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> Metchnikoff 1888 because it is quite different from the bacteria observed and described by Metchnikoff and to which he gave the name <i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> :

	and conservation of the species <i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> Metchnikoff 1888 on the basis of the type descriptive material		<i>Pasteuria ramosa</i> is conserved with the description of Metchnikoff, as amended by Starr <i>et al.</i> 1983, serving as the type species. (<i>Editorial Note.</i> This should read “serving as the type.”) In issuing this opinion, the Judicial Commission declines to comment on the assignment of strain ATCC 27377 to another genus because this is a taxonomic matter and not one of nomenclature.
62	Transfer of the type species of the genus <i>Methanococcus</i> to the genus <i>Methanosarcina</i> as <i>Methanosarcina mazei</i> (Barker 1936) comb. nov. et emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984 and conservation of the genus <i>Methanococcus</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984 with <i>Methanococcus vannielii</i> (Approved Lists 1980) as the type species	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1986;36:491	<i>Methanococcus mazei</i> , the type species of the genus <i>Methanococcus</i> , is transferred to the genus <i>Methanosarcina</i> as <i>Methanosarcina mazei</i> (Barker 1936) comb. nov. et emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984. The genus <i>Methanococcus</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984 is conserved with <i>Methanococcus vannielii</i> Stadtman and Barker 1951 (Approved Lists 1980) as the type species.

63	Rejection of the type species <i>Methanosarcina methanica</i> (Approved Lists 1980) and conservation of the genus <i>Methanosarcina</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984 with <i>Methanosarcina barkeri</i> (Approved Lists 1980) as the type species	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1986;36:492	<i>Methanosarcina methanica</i> (Approved Lists 1980), the nomenclatural type species of the genus <i>Methanosarcina</i> (Approved Lists 1980), is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> as a <i>nomen dubium et confusum</i> because it is a source of doubt and confusion. The genus <i>Methanosarcina</i> (Approved Lists 1980) emend. Mah and Kuhn 1984 is conserved with <i>Methanosarcina barkeri</i> (Approved Lists 1980) as the type species.
64	Designation of strain MF (DSM 1535) in place of strain M.o.H. (DSM 863) as the type strain of <i>Methanobacterium formicum</i> Schnell 1947, and designation of strain M.o.H. (DSM 863) as the type strain of <i>Methanobacterium</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1992;42:654; doi:10.1099/00207713-42-4-654	The type strain of <i>Methanobacterium formicum</i> is strain MF (DSM 1535), replacing strain M.o.H. (DSM 863). <i>Methanobacterium bryantii</i> is reinstated with its type strain M.o.H. (DSM 863).

	<i>bryantii</i> (Balch and Wolfe in Balch, Fox, Magrum, Woese, and Wolfe 1979, 284) Boone 1987, 173		
65	Designation of strain VPI D 19B-28 (ATCC 35185) in place of strain VPI 10068 (ATCC 33150) as the type strain of <i>Selenomonas sputigena</i> (Flügge 1886) Boskamp 1922	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1992;42:655; doi:10.1099/00207713-42-4-655	The type strain of <i>Selenomonas sputigena</i> is VPI D 19B-2 (ATCC 35185), replacing VPI 10068 (ATCC 33150). (NB VPI D 19B-28 is the correct number, not VPI D 19B-29, which is given in the ATCC catalog, 17th ed.).
66	Designation of strain NS 51 (NCTC 12261) in place of strain NCTC 3165 as the type strain of <i>Streptococcus mitis</i> Andrewes and Horder 1906	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1993;43:391; doi:10.1099/00207713-43-2-391	The type strain of <i>Streptococcus mitis</i> is NS 51 (NCTC 12261), replacing NCTC 3165.
67	Rejection of the name <i>Citrobacter diversus</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1993;43:392; doi:10.1099/00207713-43-2-392	The name <i>Citrobacter diversus</i> Werkman and Gillen 1932 is placed on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> because it was incorrectly used by Ewing and Davis in 1972 as the

	Werkman and Gillen 1932		name for a new species that cannot be considered identical to the organism described by Werkman and Gillen and thus is a <i>nomen dubium</i> .
68	Designation of strain B213c (DSM 20284) in place of Strain NCDO 1859 as the type strain of <i>Pediococcus acidilactici</i> Lindner 1887	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1996;46:835; doi:10.1099/00207713-46-3-835	<i>Pediococcus acidilactici</i> is conserved with neotype strain B213c (=DSM 20284), which replaces NCDO 1859.
69	Rejection of <i>Clostridium putrificum</i> and conservation of <i>Clostridium botulinum</i> and <i>Clostridium sporogenes</i>	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1999;49:339; doi:10.1099/00207713-49-1-339	The name <i>Clostridium putrificum</i> is rejected while <i>Clostridium botulinum</i> is conserved for toxigenic strains and <i>Clostridium sporogenes</i> is conserved for nontoxigenic strains.
70	Replacement of strain NCTC 4175, since 1963 the neotype strain of <i>Proteus vulgaris</i> , with strain ATCC 29905	<i>Int J Syst Bacteriol</i> 1999;49:1949; doi:10.1099/00207713-49-4-1949	The Judicial Commission decided that strain NCTC 4175, used as the neotype strain of <i>Proteus vulgaris</i> since 1963, be replaced by strain ATCC 29905.
71	Valid publication of the genus name <i>Thermodesulfobacterium</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2003;53:927; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.02494-0	The Judicial Commission of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes decided that the date of valid publication of the genus name <i>Thermodesulfobacterium</i> and of the species names <i>Thermodesulfobacterium</i>

	and the species names <i>Thermodesulfobacterium commune</i> Zeikus <i>et al.</i> 1983 and <i>Thermodesulfobacterium thermophilum</i> (<i>ex Desulfovibrio thermophilus</i> Rozanova and Khudyakova 1974)		<i>commune</i> and <i>Thermodesulfobacterium thermophilum</i> is 1995. <i>Thermodesulfobacterium mobile</i> Rozanova and Pivovarova 1988 is an illegitimate, later synonym of <i>Thermodesulfobacterium thermophilum</i> .
72	Strain DSM 6035 is the type strain of <i>Lactobacillus panis</i> Wiese <i>et al.</i> 1996	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2003;53:920; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.02495-0	The Judicial Commission of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes decided that strain DSM 6035 is the type strain of <i>Lactobacillus panis</i> with the consequence that the name <i>Lactobacillus panis</i> has been validly published.
73	<i>Paenibacillus durus</i> (Collins <i>et al.</i> 1994, formerly <i>Clostridium durum</i> Smith and Cato 1974) has priority over <i>Paenibacillus azotofixans</i> (Seldin <i>et al.</i> 1984)	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2003;53:931; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.02496-0	The Judicial Commission adjusted the gender of the specific epithet to <i>durus</i> (masculine) and decided that the name <i>Paenibacillus durus</i> has priority over <i>Paenibacillus azotofixans</i> ; furthermore, it was decided that the type strain of <i>Paenibacillus durus</i> is VPI 6563 (=ATCC 27763=DSM 1735), not P3L5 (=ATCC 35681). The name <i>Paenibacillus azotofixans</i> is a later synonym of <i>Paenibacillus durus</i> .

74	Strain NCIMB 13488 may serve as the type strain of <i>Halorubrum trapanicum</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2003;53:933; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.02497-0	The Judicial Commission decided that <i>Halorubrum trapanicum</i> strain NCIMB 13488 will not be the neotype, but since it is derived from strain NRC 34021, which in turn is derived from Petter's original isolate, it is 'a strain on which the original description was based' [Rule 18c of the <i>Bacteriological Code</i> (1990 Revision); Lapage <i>et al.</i> , 1992], and may therefore also serve as the type strain of the species.
75	Rejection of the genus name <i>Methanothrix</i> with the species <i>Methanothrix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 and transfer of <i>Methanothrix thermophila</i> Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992 to the genus <i>Methanosaeta</i> as <i>Methanosaeta thermophila</i> comb. nov.	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1753–1754; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.2008/005355-0	The Judicial Commission of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes has decided to place the genus <i>Methanothrix</i> with the species <i>Methanothrix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> , based on the fact that it is not represented by an axenic culture and contravenes Rule 31a of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> . The species <i>Methanothrix thermophila</i> is transferred to the genus <i>Methanosaeta</i> as <i>Methanosaeta thermophila</i> (Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992) Boone and Kamagata 1998 comb. nov.
75 (suppl.)	The genus name <i>Methanothrix</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 and the species combination <i>Methanothrix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 do not	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3597–3598; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069252-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that the genus name <i>Methanothrix</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 and the species combination <i>Methanothrix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 do not contravene Rule 31a and are not to be considered as rejected names. The genus name <i>Methanosaeta</i> Patel and Sprott 1990 applies to the same taxon as <i>Methanothrix</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 and is therefore a later heterotypic synonym. The combinations <i>Methanothrix thermoacetophila</i> corrig. Nozhevnikova and Chudina

	<p>contravene Rule 31a and are not to be considered as rejected names, the genus name</p> <p><i>Methanosaeta</i> Patel and Sprott 1990 refers to the same taxon as</p> <p><i>Methanotherix soehngeni</i> Huser <i>et al.</i> 1983 and the species combination</p> <p><i>Methanotherix thermophila</i> Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992 is rejected</p>		<p>1988 and <i>Methanotherix thermophila</i> Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992 are considered to refer to the same taxon, a consequence of which is that <i>Methanotherix thermophila</i> Kamagata <i>et al.</i> 1992 contravenes Rule 51b and is placed on the List of Rejected Names.</p>
76	<p>Strain NBRC (formerly IFO) 3782 is the type strain of <i>Streptomyces rameus</i> Shibata 1959</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2005;55:511; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.63545-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission of the International Committee for Systematics of Prokaryotes decided that strain NBRC (formerly IFO) 3782 (=No. 43797), which was the originally designated type strain, has to replace ATCC 21273 as the type strain of <i>Streptomyces rameus</i>. ATCC 21273 was given as the type strain in the Approved Lists 1980.</p>
77	<p>The type species of the genus <i>Paenibacillus</i> Ash <i>et al.</i> 1994 is</p> <p><i>Paenibacillus polymyxa</i></p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2005;55:513; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.63546-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission of the International Committee for Systematics of Prokaryotes decided that the type species of the genus <i>Paenibacillus</i> is <i>Paenibacillus polymyxa</i>.</p>

78	Rejection of the genus name <i>Pelczaria</i> with the species <i>Pelczaria aurantia</i> Poston 1994	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2005;55:515; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.63547-0	The Judicial Commission of the International Committee for Systematics of Prokaryotes has decided to place the genus <i>Pelczaria</i> with the species <i>Pelczaria aurantia</i> on the list of <i>nomina rejicienda</i> , due to the lack of an authentic type or neotype strain.
79	The nomenclatural types of the orders <i>Acholeplasmatales</i> , <i>Halanaerobiales</i> , <i>Halobacteriales</i> , <i>Methanobacteriales</i> , <i>Methanococcales</i> , <i>Methanomicrobiales</i> , <i>Planctomycetales</i> , <i>Prochlorales</i> , <i>Sulfolobales</i> , <i>Thermococcales</i> , <i>Thermoproteales</i> and <i>Verrucomicrobiales</i> are the genera <i>Acholeplasma</i> , <i>Halanaerobium</i> , <i>Halobacterium</i> ,	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2005;55:517–518; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.63548-0	The Judicial Commission corrected the nomenclatural types of twelve orders, for which, in violation of Rules 15 and 21a of the <i>Bacteriological Code</i> (1990 Revision), families instead of genera had been proposed as nomenclatural types. The following orders have the following genera as nomenclatural types: order <i>Acholeplasmatales</i> Freundt <i>et al.</i> 1984, genus <i>Acholeplasma</i> Edward and Freundt 1970 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Halanaerobiales</i> Rainey and Zhilina 1995, <i>Halanaerobium</i> Zeikus <i>et al.</i> 1984; <i>Halobacteriales</i> Grant and Larsen 1989, <i>Halobacterium</i> Elazari-Volcani 1957 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Methanobacteriales</i> Balch and Wolfe 1981, <i>Methanobacterium</i> Kluver and van Niel 1936 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Methanococcales</i> Balch and Wolfe 1981, <i>Methanococcus</i> Kluver and van Niel 1936 emend. Barker 1936 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Methanomicrobiales</i> Balch and Wolfe 1981, <i>Methanomicrobium</i> Balch and Wolfe 1981; <i>Planctomycetales</i> Schlesner and Stackebrandt 1987, <i>Planctomyces</i> Gimesi 1924 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Prochlorales</i> (ex Lewin 1977) Florenzano <i>et al.</i> 1986, <i>Prochloron</i> (ex Lewin 1977) Florenzano <i>et al.</i> 1986; <i>Sulfolobales</i> Stetter 1989, <i>Sulfolobus</i> Brock <i>et al.</i> 1972 (Approved Lists 1980); <i>Thermococcales</i> Zillig <i>et al.</i> 1988, <i>Thermococcus</i> Zillig 1983; <i>Thermoproteales</i> Zillig and Stetter 1982, <i>Thermoproteus</i>

	<p><i>Methanobacterium</i>, <i>Methanococcus</i>, <i>Methanomicrobium</i>, <i>Planctomyces</i>, <i>Prochloron</i>, <i>Sulfolobus</i>, <i>Thermococcus</i>, <i>Thermoproteus</i> and <i>Verrucomicrobium</i>, respectively</p>		<p>Zillig and Stetter 1982; <i>Verrucomicrobiales</i> Ward-Rainey <i>et al.</i> 1996, <i>Verrucomicrobium</i> Schlesner 1988.</p>
79 (suppl.)	<p>Names at the rank of class, subclass and order, their typification and current status</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3599–3602; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.069310-0</p>	<p>The attention of the Judicial Commission was drawn to issues relating to the use of names at the rank of class, subclass and order and the nomenclatural type of names at the rank of class and subclass that were not covered by Opinion 79. The Judicial Commission ruled that names at the rank of class and order proposed by Cavalier-Smith (<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2002;52:7–76) are to be placed on the List of Rejected Names (<i>nomina rejicienda</i>) and the use of names proposed in that publication above the rank of class is to be actively discouraged. In addition, a list of names at the rank of class, subclass and order is given where the nomenclatural type, description or circumscription is unclear or where they otherwise appear to be not in accordance with the Rules of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i>.</p>

80	<p>The type species of the genus <i>Salmonella</i> Lignieres 1900 is <i>Salmonella enterica</i> (ex Kauffmann and Edwards 1952) Le Minor and Popoff 1987, with the type strain LT2^T, and conservation of the epithet <i>enterica</i> in <i>Salmonella enterica</i> over all earlier epithets that may be applied to this species</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2005;55:519–520; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.63579-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission of the International Committee for Systematics of Prokaryotes has decided that the type species of the genus <i>Salmonella</i> Lignieres 1900 is <i>Salmonella enterica</i> (ex Kauffmann and Edwards 1952) Le Minor and Popoff 1987 and that the type strain of this species is strain LT2^T. In addition, the epithet <i>enterica</i> in <i>Salmonella enterica</i> is conserved over all earlier epithets that may be applied to this species.</p> <p>The Judicial Commission is aware that this Opinion has consequences for the nomenclature and taxonomy of this group of organisms. Refer to accompanying commentary and references in the Opinion.</p>
81	<p>Status of strains that contravene Rules 27 (3) and 30 of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i></p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1755–1763; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.2008/005264-0</p>	<p>Based on a list of 205 names proposed in original articles in the <i>International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology</i> or cited in Validation Lists from January 2001 that are not in accordance with Rules 27(3) and 30 of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> (the <i>Code</i>), the Judicial Commission rules that names contained in lists 2–4 are to be considered to be validly published and that deposit in more than one collection in different countries is documented. Names included in list 1 are only to be considered validly published if evidence is</p>

			presented that the strains have been deposited in additional collections, as laid down by Rules 27(3) and 30 of the <i>Code</i> .
82	The type strain of <i>Lactobacillus casei</i> is ATCC 393, ATCC 334 cannot serve as the type because it represents a different taxon, the name <i>Lactobacillus paracasei</i> and its subspecies names are not rejected and the revival of the name ' <i>Lactobacillus zeae</i> ' contravenes Rules 51b (1) and (2) of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1764–1765; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.2008/005330-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that typification of <i>Lactobacillus casei</i> is based on ATCC 393, that ATCC 334 is a member of a different taxon and that the publication rejecting the name <i>Lactobacillus paracasei</i> (and its included subspecies) together with the revival of the name ' <i>Lactobacillus zeae</i> ' contravenes Rules 51b (1) and (2) of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> .
83	The subgenus names <i>Moraxella</i> subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> and <i>Moraxella</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1766–1767; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.2008/005272-0	The Judicial Commission of the International Committee for Systematics of Prokaryotes rules that the following names should have been included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Branhamella</i> Bøvre 1979),

	<p>subgen. <i>Branhamella</i> and the species names included within these taxa should have been included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names and a ruling on the proposal to make changes to Rule 34a</p>		<p><i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939), <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Branhamella</i> Bøvre 1979) <i>catarrhalis</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Branhamella</i> Bøvre 1979) <i>caviae</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Branhamella</i> Bøvre 1979) <i>ovis</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>atlantae</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>bovis</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>lacunata</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>nonliquefaciens</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>osloensis</i>, <i>Moraxella</i> (subgen. <i>Moraxella</i> Lwoff 1939) <i>phenylpyruvica</i>. Proposals to alter Rule 34a were rejected.</p>
83 (suppl.)	<p>The subgenus names <i>Moraxella</i> and <i>Branhamella</i> (in the genus <i>Moraxella</i>) are not in accordance with the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> and are therefore not validly published</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3595–3596; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069245-0</p>	<p>The publication of Opinion 83, which dealt with the valid publication of the subgenus names <i>Moraxella</i> and <i>Branhamella</i> (in the genus <i>Moraxella</i>), has highlighted a problem relating to the absence of descriptions associated with these names at the time they were effectively published. This calls into question whether the ruling outlined in Opinion 83, that these names should have qualified for inclusion on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names, and their inclusion on Validation List 15 are not in accordance with Rule 27 of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> governing the valid publication of a name. The subgenus names <i>Moraxella</i> and <i>Branhamella</i> (in the genus <i>Moraxella</i>) are not to be considered to be included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names, nor are they to be considered to be validly published by inclusion on Validation List 15.</p>

84	The genus name <i>Sinorhizobium</i> Chen <i>et al.</i> 1988 is a later synonym of <i>Ensifer</i> Casida 1982 and is not conserved over the latter genus name, and the species name ' <i>Sinorhizobium adhaerens</i> ' is not validly published	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1973; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.2008/005991-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that the genus name <i>Sinorhizobium</i> Chen <i>et al.</i> 1988 is a later synonym of <i>Ensifer</i> Casida 1982, and that the former genus name is not conserved over the latter genus name. The species name ' <i>Sinorhizobium adhaerens</i> ' is not validly published.
85	The adjectival form of the epithet in <i>Tannerella forsythensis</i> Sakamoto <i>et al.</i> 2002 is to be retained and the name is to be corrected to <i>Tannerella forsythia</i> Sakamoto <i>et al.</i> 2002	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1974; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.2008/006007-0	The Judicial Commission rules that the adjectival form is to be conserved in the specific epithet <i>forsythia</i> in <i>Tannerella forsythia</i> .
86	Necessary corrections to the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58:1975; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.2008/006015-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to Rule 40d, formerly Rule 46, of the <i>Bacteriological Code</i> , the authorship of a number of subspecies names included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names must be corrected. These names are

	according to Rule 40d (formerly Rule 46)		<i>Acetobacter aceti</i> subsp. <i>aceti</i> , <i>Acetobacter pasteurianus</i> subsp. <i>pasteurianus</i> , <i>Bacteroides melaninogenicus</i> subsp. <i>melaninogenicus</i> , <i>Campylobacter fetus</i> subsp. <i>fetus</i> , <i>Mycobacterium chelonae</i> subsp. <i>chelonae</i> , <i>Propionibacterium freudenreichii</i> subsp. <i>freudenreichii</i> , <i>Selenomonas ruminantium</i> subsp. <i>ruminantium</i> , <i>Streptovorticillium fervens</i> subsp. <i>fervens</i> , <i>Veillonella parvula</i> subsp. <i>parvula</i> and <i>Zymomonas mobilis</i> subsp. <i>mobilis</i> .
87	<i>Corynebacterium ilicis</i> is typified by ICMP 2608 =ICPB CI144, <i>Arthrobacter ilicis</i> is typified by DSM 20138 =ATCC 14264 =NCPB 1228 and the two are not homotypic synonyms, and clarification of the authorship of these two species	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2008;58: 1976–1978; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.2008/006221-0	The Judicial Commission rules that the name <i>Corynebacterium ilicis</i> Mandel <i>et al.</i> 1961 is represented by the type strain ICMP 2608 =ICPB CI144 and is reported to be a plantpathogenic species. <i>Arthrobacter ilicis</i> is represented by the type strain DSM 20138 =ATCC 14264 =NCPB 1228 and is not a homotypic synonym of <i>Corynebacterium ilicis</i> Mandel <i>et al.</i> 1961, and is reported not to be a plant pathogen. The authorship is to be cited as <i>Arthrobacter ilicis</i> Collins <i>et al.</i> 1982 and typification and the description of this species are to be found in Collins <i>et al.</i> (1981) [Collins MD, Jones D, Kroppenstedt RM. <i>Zentralbl Bakteriol Parasitenkd Infektionskr Hyg Abt I Orig C</i> 1981;2:318–323].
88	The status of the name <i>Lactobacillus rogosae</i> Holdeman and Moore 1974	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3578–3579; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069146-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that the combination <i>Lactobacillus rogosae</i> Holdeman and Moore 1974 represented by the type strain ATCC 27753 listed on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names does not appear to be currently represented

			by an extant type strain. Further work is needed to determine whether a derivative of the original type can be found or whether a neotype can be designated.
89	The epithet <i>aurantiaca</i> in <i>Micromonospora aurantiaca</i> Sveshnikova <i>et al.</i> 1969 (Approved Lists 1980) is illegitimate and requires a replacement epithet	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3580–3581; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069153-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that the combination <i>Micromonospora aurantiaca</i> Sveshnikova <i>et al.</i> 1969 (Approved Lists 1980) may not serve as the correct name of the taxon because Rule 12b states that no specific or subspecific epithets within the same genus may be the same if based on different types and the specific epithet <i>aurantiaca</i> in <i>Micromonospora aurantiaca</i> Sveshnikova <i>et al.</i> 1969 (Approved Lists 1980) is the same as the subspecific epithet <i>aurantiaca</i> in <i>Micromonospora carbonacea</i> subsp. <i>aurantiaca</i> Luedemann and Brodsky 1964 (Approved Lists 1980) and the latter has priority. According to Rule 53, the duplication of the same specific or subspecific epithet based on different types creates an illegitimate epithet with the principle of priority determining which is to be replaced as specified in Rule 54. The replacement of the specific epithet <i>aurantiaca</i> in <i>Micromonospora aurantiaca</i> Sveshnikova <i>et al.</i> 1969 (Approved Lists 1980) also requires that the authorship of the original authors is retained. However, action of this nature requires that the original epithet is maintained in the original combination. There currently appears to be no mechanisms where such action can be taken.
90	The combination <i>Enterobacter agglomerans</i> is to be cited as <i>Enterobacter</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3582–3583; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069161-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to information presented to it, the combination <i>Enterobacter agglomerans</i> is to be cited as <i>Enterobacter agglomerans</i> (Beijerinck 1888) Ewing and Fife 1972 and the combination <i>Pantoea agglomerans</i> is to be cited as <i>Pantoea agglomerans</i> (Beijerinck 1888) Gavini <i>et al.</i> 1989.

	<p><i>agglomerans</i> (Beijerinck 1888) Ewing and Fife 1972 and the combination <i>Pantoea agglomerans</i> is to be cited as <i>Pantoea agglomerans</i> (Beijerinck 1888) Gavini <i>et al.</i> 1989</p>		
91	<p>ATCC 43642 replaces ATCC 23581 as the type strain of <i>Leptospira interrogans</i> (Stimson 1907) Wenyon 1926</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3584–3585; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.069179-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to information presented to it, the type strain of <i>Leptospira interrogans</i> (Stimson 1907) Wenyon 1926 designated on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names (ATCC 23581) has been shown not to represent an authentic culture of strain RGA (a member of the serovar Icterohaemorrhagiae) and ATCC 43642, derived from an authentic strain of strain RGA, a member of the serovar Icterohaemorrhagiae, is designated the type strain of <i>Leptospira interrogans</i> (Stimson 1907) Wenyon 1926.</p>
92	<p>The Request for an Opinion that the current use of the genus name <i>Mycoplasma</i> be maintained and <i>Mycoplasma coccoides</i> be considered a</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3586–3587; doi:10.1099/ijms.0.069187-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission affirms that the request that the current use of the genus name <i>Mycoplasma</i> be maintained and <i>Mycoplasma coccoides</i> be considered a legitimate name is denied.</p>

	legitimate name is denied		
93	<p>The designated type strain of <i>Pseudomonas halophila</i> Fendrich 1989 is DSM 3051, the designated type strain of <i>Halovibrio variabilis</i> Fendrich 1989 is DSM 3050, a new name <i>Halomonas utahensis</i> (Fendrich 1989) Sorokin and Tindall 2006 is created for DSM 3051 when treated as a member of the genus <i>Halomonas</i>, the combination <i>Halomonas variabilis</i> (Fendrich 1989) Dobson and Franzmann 1996 is rejected, the</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3588–3589; doi:10.1099/ij.s.0.069195-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to information presented to it, the designated type strain of <i>Pseudomonas halophila</i> Fendrich 1989 is DSM 3051 (replacing DSM 3050) and the designated type strain of <i>Halovibrio variabilis</i> Fendrich 1989 is DSM 3050 (replacing DSM 3051). A new name, “<i>Halomonas utahensis</i>” (Fendrich 1989) Sorokin and Tindall 2006 nom. nov., is created for the species represented by DSM 3051 when treated as a member of the genus <i>Halomonas</i>, because the combination <i>Halomonas halophila</i> (Quesada <i>et al.</i> 1984) Dobson and Franzmann 1996 has priority based on the fact that the epithet <i>halophila</i> in the combination <i>Halomonas halophila</i> (Quesada <i>et al.</i> 1984) Dobson and Franzmann 1996 (basonym <i>Deleya halophila</i> Quesada <i>et al.</i> 1984) has priority over the epithet <i>halophila</i> should the taxon <i>Pseudomonas halophila</i> Fendrich 1989 be treated as a member of the genus <i>Halomonas</i>. The combination <i>Halomonas variabilis</i> (Fendrich 1989) Dobson and Franzmann 1996 is rejected. The combination <i>Halovibrio denitrificans</i> Sorokin <i>et al.</i> 2006 is validly published with an emendation of the description of the genus <i>Halovibrio</i> Fendrich 1989 emend. Sorokin <i>et al.</i> 2006.</p>

	<p>combination <i>Halovibrio denitrificans</i> Sorokin <i>et al.</i> 2006 is validly published with an emendation of the description of the genus <i>Halovibrio</i> Fendrich 1989 emend. Sorokin <i>et al.</i> 2006</p>		
94	<p><i>Agrobacterium radiobacter</i> (Beijerinck and van Delden 1902) Conn 1942 has priority over <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith & Townsend 1907) Conn 1942 when the two are treated as members of the same species based on the principle of priority and Rule 23a Note 1 as applied to the</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3590–3592; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069203-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to the Rules of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> (including changes made to the wording), the combination <i>Agrobacterium radiobacter</i> (Beijerinck and van Delden 1902) Conn 1942 has priority over the combination <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942 when the two are treated as members of the same species based on the principle of priority as applied to the corresponding specific epithets. The type species of the genus is <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942, even if treated as a later heterotypic synonym of <i>Agrobacterium radiobacter</i> (Beijerinck and van Delden 1902) Conn 1942. <i>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</i> (Smith and Townsend 1907) Conn 1942 is typified by the strain defined on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names and by strains known to be derived from the nomenclatural type.</p>

	corresponding specific epithets		
95	The combinations <i>Lysobacter enzymogenes</i> subsp. <i>enzymogenes</i> Christensen and Cook 1978, <i>L. enzymogenes</i> subsp. <i>cookii</i> Christensen 1978 and <i>Streptococcus casseliflavus</i> (Mundt and Graham 1968) Vaughan <i>et al.</i> 1979 were in accordance with the <i>International Code of</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3920-3921; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069211-0	The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to information presented to it, the combination <i>Lysobacter enzymogenes</i> subsp. <i>enzymogenes</i> Christensen and Cook 1978, the combination <i>Lysobacter enzymogenes</i> subsp. <i>cookii</i> Christensen 1978 and the combination <i>Streptococcus casseliflavus</i> (Mundt and Graham 1968) Vaughan <i>et al.</i> 1979 were in accordance with the wording of the 1975 and 1990 revisions of the <i>International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> but they are not to be considered to be included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names.

	<p><i>Nomenclature of Bacteria</i> at the time of publication in the <i>International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology</i>, but are not to be considered to be included on the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names</p>		
96	<p>The properties given at the time of publication for the designated type strain of <i>Leifsonia rubra</i> Reddy <i>et al.</i> 2003, CMS 76r does not correspond with those of MTCC 4210, DSM 15304, CIP 107783 and JCM 12471 that are deposited as representing the type strain</p>	<p><i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2014;64:3593–3594; doi:10.1099/ijs.0.069229-0</p>	<p>The Judicial Commission affirms that, according to information presented to it, the type strain of <i>Leifsonia rubra</i> Reddy <i>et al.</i> 2003 designated in the original publication as strain CMS 76r and deposited as MTCC 4210, DSM 15304, CIP 107783 and JCM 12471 does not have properties corresponding with those of the strains held in those collections under those accession numbers. The species <i>Leifsonia rubra</i> Reddy <i>et al.</i> 2003 was not represented by an authentic deposit of a type strain at the time of effective publication in the pages of the <i>International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology</i>.</p>

97	Denial of the recommendation for the conservation of the name <i>Streptomyces scabies</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:1439–1440; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.003921	The Judicial Commission denied the request for the conservation of the name <i>Streptomyces scabies</i> , ruling that the continued use of the correction <i>Streptomyces scabiei</i> is allowed.
98	The name <i>Bacillus aeolius</i> is not validly published	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:1439–1440; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.003921	The Judicial Commission denied the request to place the name <i>Bacillus aeolius</i> on the list of rejected names. In the absence of authentic type material, the name <i>Bacillus aeolius</i> is not validly published, based on the wording of Rules 18a, 27(3) and 30(3b).
99	The name <i>Pectinatus portalensis</i> is not validly published	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:1439–1440; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.003921	The Judicial Commission denied the request to place the name <i>Pectinatus portalensis</i> on the list of rejected names. In the absence of authentic type material, the name <i>Pectinatus portalensis</i> is not validly published, based on the wording of Rules 18a, 27(3) and 30(3b).
100	A neotype strain does not need to be designated for <i>Eubacterium rectale</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:5177–5181; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.004390	Based on the wording of Rule 18c, the Judicial Commission denied the request for the recognition of strain A1-86 as the neotype strain of <i>Eubacterium rectale</i> , ruling that strain VPI 0990 (=ATCC 33656=CIP 105953=DSM 3377=JCM 17463=KCTC 5835=LMG 30912) is considered to be a duplicate isolate of the same strain as VPI 0989 (=ATCC 25578) and may serve as the nomenclatural type.
101	Strain ATCC 25946 (=DSM 14877) serves as the type strain of <i>Melittangium lichenicola</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:5177–5181; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.004390	The Judicial Commission approved a request about the type strain of <i>M. lichenicola</i> , ruling: (i) that the strain deposited as ATCC 25944 (=M155=DSM 2275) does not conform with the published morphological description of <i>M. lichenicola</i> , and that this strain should not serve as the type strain because it is not an authentic

	instead of ATCC 25944 (=DSM 2275)		representative of the designated type strain; (ii) that the reference strain Windsor M201 (=ATCC 25946=DSM 14877=NBRC 100091) should serve as the type strain of <i>M. lichenicola</i> ; and (iii) that the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names must be corrected accordingly.
102	Strain Cc m8 (=DSM 14697=CIP 109128=JCM 12621) is an established neotype strain for the species <i>Myxococcus macrosporus</i> , replacing the designated type strain Windsor M271, and strain Mx s8 (=DSM 14675=JCM 12634) is an established neotype strain for the species <i>Myxococcus stipitatus</i> , replacing the designated type strain Windsor M78	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2020;70:5177–5181; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.004390	Windsor M271 and Windsor M78 are not herbarium material and hence cannot be considered preserved specimens under Rule 18a(1); <i>Corallocooccus macrosporus</i> (ex Krzemieniewska and Krzemieniewski 1926) Reichenbach 2007 and <i>Myxococcus macrosporus</i> (Krzemieniewska and Krzemieniewski 1926) Zahler and McCurdy 1974 (Approved Lists 1980) should share the same nomenclatural type; strain Cc m8 (=DSM 14697=CIP 109128=JCM 12621) is an established neotype strain for the species <i>Myxococcus macrosporus</i> , replacing the designated type strain Windsor M271; strain Mx s8 (=DSM 14675=JCM 12634) is an established neotype strain for the species <i>Myxococcus stipitatus</i> , replacing the designated type strain Windsor M78.
103	Rejection of the name <i>Spirillum volutans</i> Ehrenberg 1832 and	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	Based on the description of <i>Spirillum volutans</i> cited in the Approved Lists, the Judicial Commission concluded that it might be possible to locate a neotype strain, through either re-isolation or searching in culture collections. Strain ATCC 19553 is

	designation of <i>Spirillum winogradskyi</i> as the type species of the genus <i>Spirillum</i>		a good candidate. Therefore, the Judicial Commission did not place the name <i>Spirillum volutans</i> Ehrenberg 1832 (Approved Lists 1980) on the list of rejected names.
104	Rejection of the name <i>Beijerinckia fluminensis</i> Döbereiner and Ruschel 1958	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	Isolation of strains that correspond to the properties of <i>Beijerinckia fluminensis</i> was reported from different countries. The Judicial Commission therefore did not place the name <i>Beijerinckia fluminensis</i> Ehrenberg 1832 (Approved Lists 1980) Döbereiner and Ruschel 1958 (Approved Lists 1980) on the list of rejected names at this time, as a possible candidate neotype strain may already exist.
105	Renaming the genus <i>Rhodoligotrophos</i> as <i>Rhodoligotrophus</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The Judicial Commission concluded that <i>Rhodoligotrophos</i> Fukuda <i>et al.</i> 2012 does not violate the rules of the ICNP. The Judicial Commission should decide on orthographical corrections from case to case. In the case of <i>Rhodoligotrophos</i> , the request was denied.
106	Conservation of the name <i>Rhodococcus equi</i> and rejection of its earlier heterotypic synonym <i>Corynebacterium hoagii</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The Judicial Commission placed the epithet <i>hoagii</i> in <i>Corynebacterium hoagii</i> (Morse 1912) Ebersson 1918 (Approved Lists 1980) and <i>Rhodococcus hoagii</i> (Morse 1912) Kämpfer <i>et al.</i> 2014 on the list of <i>epitheta specifica et subspecifica rejicienda</i> . The request to conserve the epithet <i>equi</i> in <i>Rhodococcus equi</i> (Magnusson 1923) Goodfellow and Alderson 1977 (Approved Lists 1980) was denied.
107	Rejection of the name <i>Thermomicrobium fosteri</i> Phillips and Perry	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	Under the assumption that <i>Thermomicrobium fosteri</i> Phillips and Perry 1976 (Approved Lists 1980) is based on a mixed culture, the Judicial Commission rejected

	1976 (Approved Lists 1980)		the name as a <i>nomen confusum</i> according to Rule 56a (3) and a <i>nomen dubium</i> according to Rule 56a (2).
108	Rejection of the name <i>Hyphomonas rosenbergii</i> Weiner <i>et al.</i> 2000	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The deposited strains ATCC 43869 ^T and DSM 17769 ^T apparently do not belong of the genus <i>Hyphomonas</i> , but most likely belong to the genus <i>Henriciella</i> . However, the 16S rRNA gene sequence with accession number AF082795 affiliates with species of <i>Hyphomonas</i> . One possible interpretation of the data is that AF082795 was derived from VP6 ^T but ATCC 43869 ^T and DSM 17769 ^T are not deposits of VP6 ^T . The second possibility is that AF082795 is not derived from VP6 ^T but ATCC 43869 ^T and DSM 17769 ^T are deposits of VP6 ^T . The third possibility is that VP6 ^T was indeed a mixed culture and for this reason AF082795 as well as ATCC 43869 ^T (= DSM 17769 ^T) were both derived from it. As it was not possible to distinguish between the three scenarios, the Judicial Commission did not take action, and the request to place <i>Hyphomonas rosenbergii</i> Weiner <i>et al.</i> 2000 on the list of rejected names was denied.
109	Rejection of the names <i>Bacillus aerius</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006, <i>Bacillus aerophilus</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006 and <i>Bacillus stratosphericus</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006 because type strains	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The Judicial Commission concluded that the names <i>Bacillus aerius</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006, <i>Bacillus aerophilus</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006 and <i>Bacillus stratosphericus</i> Shivaji <i>et al.</i> 2006 are not validly published although they were proposed in an effective publication in the IJSEM. In particular, the three names did not meet the requirements listed in Rule 30 (3b) and Rule 30 (4). Having an effective publication in the IJSEM is neither a necessary nor a sufficient condition for a name to be validly published.

110	Rejection of the name <i>Actinobaculum massiliense</i> Greub and Raoult 2006	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The Judicial Commission concluded that the name <i>Actinobaculum massiliense</i> corrig. Greub and Raoult 2006 is not validly published, despite its inclusion in Validation List No. 111, because the requirements for valid publication, specifically Rules 18a, 27 (3) and 30 (3b), were not met.
111	Conservation of the name <i>Methanocorpusculum parvum</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005197; doi: 10.1099/ijsem.0.005197	The Judicial Commission concluded that the name <i>Methanocorpusculum parvum</i> Zellner <i>et al.</i> 1988 does not become illegitimate by considering it as a later heterotypic synonym of <i>Methanogenium aggregans</i> Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985 \equiv <i>Methanocorpusculum aggregans</i> (Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985) Xun <i>et al.</i> 1989. It would indeed violate the <i>Code</i> to treat <i>Methanogenium aggregans</i> Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985 as the correct name of a species that contains both the nomenclatural type of <i>Methanogenium aggregans</i> Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985 and <i>Methanogenium aggregans</i> Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985 \equiv <i>Methanocorpusculum aggregans</i> (Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985) Xun <i>et al.</i> 1989. Yet this does not render <i>Methanogenium aggregans</i> Ollivier <i>et al.</i> 1985 an illegitimate name. The status of <i>Methanocorpusculum parvum</i> Zellner <i>et al.</i> 1988 as the nomenclatural type of <i>Methanocorpusculum</i> Zellner <i>et al.</i> 1988 is thus not in danger.
112	Rejection of the name <i>Seliberia</i> Aristovskaya and Parinkina 1963 (Approved Lists 1980)	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72:005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to place <i>Seliberia</i> Aristovskaya and Parinkina 1963 (Approved Lists 1980) on the list of rejected names is denied because the information provided is insufficient for drawing a conclusion.

113	Rejection of the name <i>Shewanella irciniae</i> Lee <i>et al.</i> 2006	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to place <i>Shewanella irciniae</i> Lee <i>et al.</i> 2006 on the list of rejected names is denied because the information provided is insufficient for drawing a conclusion.
114	Rejection of the name <i>Enterobacter siamensis</i> Khunthongpan <i>et al.</i> 2014	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to place <i>Enterobacter siamensis</i> Khunthongpan <i>et al.</i> 2014 on the list of rejected names is denied because the information provided is insufficient for drawing a conclusion.
115	Rejection of the name <i>Moorella</i> <i>thermoautotrophica</i> (Wiegel <i>et al.</i> 1981) Collins <i>et al.</i> 1994	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The epithet in <i>Moorella thermoautotrophica</i> (Wiegel <i>et al.</i> 1981) Collins <i>et al.</i> 1994 is placed on the list of rejected epithets because this species name is a <i>nomen confusum</i> .
116	Assessment of the consequences of Rule 8 being retroactive	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The Judicial Commission revisits the names of taxa above the rank of genus which should be comprised of the stem of the name of a nomenclatural type and a category-specific ending but fail to do so. Such names should be orthographically corrected if the sole error is the inadvertent usage of an incorrect stem, and be regarded as illegitimate if otherwise. The necessary corrections are made for a number of names. Class names such as <i>Clostridia</i> have an actual ending of -a instead of -ia and are illegitimate as long as Rule 8 is retroactive.
117	Designation of <i>Methylothermus</i> <i>subterraneus</i> Hirayama	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to designate <i>Methylothermus subterraneus</i> Hirayama <i>et al.</i> 2011 as the type species of the genus <i>Methylothermus</i> is denied because an equivalent action compatible with the <i>Code</i> was already conducted.

	<i>et al.</i> 2011 as the type species of the genus <i>Methylothermus</i>		
118	Orthographical correction of the name <i>Flaviaestuariibacter</i> to <i>Flavaestuariibacter</i>	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The possible orthographical correction of the name <i>Flaviaestuariibacter</i> is treated, as are the analogous cases of <i>Fredinandcohnia</i> and <i>Hydrogeniiclostidium</i> . The genus names are corrected to <i>Flaviaestuariibacter</i> , <i>Ferdinandcohnia</i> and <i>Hydrogeniiclostridium</i> , respectively.
119	Assignment of <i>Actinomycetales</i> Buchanan 1917 (Approved Lists 1980) as nomenclatural type of the class <i>Actinobacteria</i> Stackebrandt <i>et al.</i> 1997	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	It is concluded that assigning <i>Actinomycetales</i> Buchanan 1917 (Approved Lists 1980) as nomenclatural type of the class <i>Actinobacteria</i> Stackebrandt <i>et al.</i> 1997 would not render this name legitimate if Rule 8 remained retroactive. The request is granted but <i>Actinomycetales</i> is also assigned as type of <i>Actinomycetes</i> Krassilnikov 1949 (Approved Lists 1980). This means that <i>Actinomycetia</i> Salam <i>et al.</i> 2020 would become illegitimate if Rule 8 was made non-retroactive and the correct name of the class would then be <i>Actinomycetes</i> Krassilnikov 1949 (Approved Lists 1980).
120	Orthographical correction of the name <i>Amycolatopsis albidoflavus</i> Lee and Hah 2001 to <i>Amycolatopsis albidiflava</i> corrig. Lee and Hah 2001	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The possible orthographical correction of the name <i>Amycolatopsis albidoflavus</i> is treated. It is grammatically corrected to <i>Amycolatopsis albidiflava</i> . Six names which could according to Rule 61 be grammatically corrected by anyone are also corrected.

121	Revision of Judicial Opinion 69	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to revise Opinion 69 is denied because there is no basis in the <i>Code</i> for revoking the rejection of a name or epithet or revoking the conservation of a name or epithet. However, it is also noted that Opinion 69 does not have the undesirable consequences emphasized in the request.
122	Rejection of various taxon names of <i>Mollicutes</i> validly published in 2018	<i>Int J Syst Evol Microbiol</i> 2022;72: 005481; doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.005481	The request to reject various taxon names of <i>Mollicutes</i> proposed in 2018 is denied because it is based on misinterpretations of the <i>Code</i> , which are clarified. In particular, the <i>Code</i> guarantees taxonomic freedom. Alternative ways to solve the perceived problems are outlined.

2428 **APPENDIX 6. PUBLISHED SOURCES FOR RECOMMENDED MINIMAL STANDARDS FOR THE**
 2429 **DESCRIPTION OF NEW TAXA OF PROKARYOTES**

2430

2431 Recommendations for minimal standards of description have been published in the IJSEM
 2432 for the following groups. This list is current through July 2022.

2433

2434

Group	References
General (genome sequences)	[73]
Aerobic, endospore-forming bacteria	[74]
<i>Bifidobacterium</i> , <i>Lactobacillus</i> and related genera	[75]
<i>Brucella</i>	[76,77]
<i>Campylobacteraceae</i>	[78,79]
<i>Flavobacteriaceae</i>	[80]
<i>Halobacteriales</i> and other orders in the class <i>Halobacteria</i>	[81]
<i>Halomonadaceae</i>	[82,83]
<i>Helicobacter</i> and <i>Helicobacteraceae</i>	[84,85]
Methanogenic Archaea	[86]
<i>Micrococcineae</i>	[87]
<i>Mollicutes</i>	[88-90]
<i>Moraxella</i> and <i>Acinetobacter</i>	[91]
<i>Mycobacterium</i>	[92]
<i>Mycoplasmatales</i>	[93] (superseded by recommendations on <i>Mollicutes</i> above)
<i>Pasteurellaceae</i>	[94]
Rhizobia and Agrobacteria	[95]
Root- and Stem-Nodulating Bacteria	[96]
<i>Staphylococcus</i>	[97]
<i>Xanthomonas</i>	[98]

2435

2436 **APPENDIX 7. PUBLICATION OF A NEW NAME**

2437

2438 Valid publication of the name of a taxon (including a new combination) requires publication
2439 in the *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* (IJSEM) of (a) the
2440 name of the taxon, (b) a designation of a type for the new taxon, and (c) a description or a
2441 reference to an effectively published description of the taxon, whether in the *IJSEM* or in
2442 another publication.

2443

2444 (1) The new name should be in the correct form. Generic and suprageneric names are
2445 single words in Latin form and spelled with an initial capital letter. Names of species are
2446 binary combinations in Latin form consisting of a generic name and a single, specific epithet;
2447 the latter spelled with an initial lowercase letter. Subspecific names are ternary
2448 combinations, consisting of the name of a species followed by the term “subspecies”
2449 (abbreviation: “subsp.”) and this followed by a single subspecific epithet. Names of taxa
2450 from the rank of order through tribe are formed by the addition of the appropriate suffix to
2451 the stem of the name of the type genus (see (5) below). The suffix for order is *-ales*, for
2452 suborder *-ineae*, for family *-aceae*, and for tribe *-eae*. The suffix for class is *-ia*, for subclass –
2453 *idae*. These endings are added to the stem of the name of the type genus of the type order
2454 of the class or subclass. Names of new phyla are formed by the addition of the suffix *-ota* to
2455 the stem of the name of one of the contained genera.

2456

2457 Whenever possible, the title of the paper should include any new names or combinations
2458 that are proposed in the text.

2459

2460 (2) New names are proposed by appending the phrase “*species nova*” (abbreviation: sp.
2461 nov.), “*genus novum*” (abbreviation: gen. nov.), “*combinatio nova*” (abbreviation: comb.
2462 nov.), or the like after the name or combination that is being proposed. Revival of names
2463 published prior to 1 January 1980 but not included in an Approved List may be effected by
2464 provisions in Rule 33.

2465

2466 A list of abbreviations used in the description of new taxa is given in the following Table.

- 2467
- 2468 **Common abbreviations used in publications of names of new taxa of prokaryotes and their etymologies.**
- 2469
- 2470 (modified from [99])
- 2471

	Abbreviation	Full spelling	Explanation	ICNP rule
Taxonomic ranks				
	subsp. nov.	<i>subspecies nova</i>	New subspecies	13a
	sp. nov.	<i>species nova</i>	New species	27, 33a
	gen. nov. ¹	<i>genus novum</i>	New genus	27, 33a
	fam. nov.	<i>familia nova</i>	New family	27
	ord. nov.	<i>ordo novus</i>	New order	33a
	class. nov.	<i>classis nova</i>	New class	33a
	phyl. nov.	<i>phylum novum</i>	New phylum	33a
	comb. nov.	<i>combinatio nova</i>	New combination, when an established epithet (taken from the basonym) is combined with another genus name to form a species name, or with another genus name and another epithet to form a subspecies name	27, 33a, 34a
	nom. nov. ¹	<i>nomen novum</i>	A new name to be established when the establishment of a comb. nov. would lead to a homonym	34a

	nom. rev. ¹	<i>nomen revictum</i>	Reserved for names that existed before 1980, were not included in the Approved Lists of 1980 and are to be revived	28a, 33c
	nom. approb. ¹	<i>nomen approbatum</i>	Name included in an Approved List	33b
Categories of words and word elements				
	n.	noun, substantive		
	v.	verb		
	adj.	adjective		
	part.	participle		
	pres. part.	present participle		
	part. adj.	participle used as adjective	To comply with Rule 12c(1) so that a participle can be used as a specific or subspecific epithet	
	prep.	preposition		
	pref.	prefix		
	pron.	pronoun		
	suff.	suffix		
Terms referring to gender and				

grammatical declensions				
	masc.	masculine		
	fem.	feminine		
	neut.	neuter		
	sing.	singular		
	pl.	plural		
	nom. ¹	nominative		
	gen. ¹	genitive		
	dim.	diminutive		
Source of words or word elements				
	L.	Latin	Reserved for words used in classical Latin	
	N.L.	Neo-Latin	Words newly coined, based on classical Latin elements and/or Latinized modern words	
	M.L.	Medieval Latin	Seldom used; in the past M.L. was often used for Modern Latin, now to be replaced with N.L.	Recommendation 6(8)
	Gr.	Greek		
Other relevant abbreviations				

	corrig.	<i>corrigendum</i>	Indicates a corrected typographical or orthographic error	61
	emend.	<i>emendavit</i>	Alteration of the diagnostic characters or of the circumscription of a taxon	35

2472

2473 ¹The abbreviations “nom.” and “gen.” can thus mean nomen and nominative and genus or genitive, respectively, depending on the context.

2474 (3) The name should not be a later homonym of a name previously validly published in the
2475 botanical and zoological literature (See Appendix 3 for published sources of names of plant
2476 and animal taxa.)

2477

2478 (4) Rule 27(2)b states that the derivation (etymology) of a new name (and, if necessary, of a
2479 new combination) must be given. It is recommended to present the etymology, preceded by
2480 the proposed syllabification, in the style shown in the following hypothetical example of a
2481 new genus name:

2482 *Thermalbibacter* gen. nov. (Therm.al.bi.bac'ter. Gr. fem. n. *therme*, heat; L. masc. adj.
2483 *albus*, white; N.L. masc. n. *bacter*, a rod; N.L. masc. n. *Thermalbibacter*, a white rod in a
2484 hot environment).

2485 The syllabification is printed in roman type, the stressed syllable is followed by the
2486 apostrophe sign ('), and the last syllable is followed by a full stop. For guidelines on how to
2487 break names into syllables, see p. 246 in [100].

2488

2489 (5) The name must be accompanied by a description of the taxon or by a reference to an
2490 effectively published description of the taxon (see (7) below).

2491

2492 (6) The nomenclatural type of a new taxon should be designated. In the case of species and
2493 subspecies, the type strain should be designated by the author's strain number as well as
2494 the accession number, under which it is held by at least two culture collections located in
2495 different countries from which cultures of the strain are available without restrictions.

2496

2497 A nomenclatural type is that constituent element of a taxon to which the name of a taxon is
2498 permanently attached. The type of a species or a subspecies is a strain, that of a genus is a
2499 species, and that of an order, suborder, family, or tribe is the genus on which name the
2500 higher taxon name is based (see 1 above). The type of a class or subclass is one of the
2501 contained orders. The type of a phylum is one of the contained genera.

2502

2503 A type strain is one of the strains on which the author(s) who first described a named
2504 species or subspecies based the description of the species or subspecies, and which the
2505 author(s) or a subsequent author(s) designated as a type.

2506

2507 A neotype strain replaces a type strain which can no longer be found (Rule 18c) or is no
2508 longer viable (Rule 18a(2), Rule 30(3)). The neotype should possess the characteristics as
2509 given in the original description; any deviations should be explained. A neotype strain must
2510 be proposed by an author in the IJSEM (proposed neotype) together with a reference (or
2511 references) to the first description and name for the microorganism (or to an Approved List,
2512 if appropriate), a description (or reference to a description) of the proposed neotype strain,
2513 and a record of the designation of the author(s) for the type strain and at least two culture
2514 collections from which cultures of the strain are available. The neotype strain becomes
2515 established two years after the date of publication in the IJSEM (established neotype). Any
2516 objections should be referred to the Judicial Commission within the first year after
2517 publication of the proposal. A neotype strain shall be proposed only after a careful search
2518 for original strains. If an original strain is subsequently discovered, the matter shall be
2519 referred immediately to the Judicial Commission. Allowance is made for replacement of an
2520 unsuitable type strain.

2521

2522 (7) Descriptions of taxa should include the following information: (a) those characteristics
2523 which are essential for membership in the taxon, i.e., those characteristics which constitute
2524 the basic concept of the taxon; (b) those characteristics which qualify the taxon for
2525 membership in the next higher taxon; (c) the diagnostic characteristics, i.e., those
2526 characteristics which distinguish the taxon from closely related taxa; and (d) in the case of
2527 species, the total number of strains studied, and the strain designations should be given.
2528 From this information, the detailed results for each strain can be reconstructed without the
2529 full publication of the details for each strain. When appropriate, suitable photomicrographs
2530 and, if necessary, electron photomicrographs should be included as part of the description,
2531 to show morphological or anatomical characters that are pertinent to the classification.
2532 Descriptions should conform, at least, to such proposed minimal standards for the
2533 description of new taxa in certain groups as have been approved by the ICSP Subcommittees
2534 on Taxonomy.

2535 APPENDIX 8. PREPARATION OF A REQUEST FOR AN OPINION

2536

2537 In cases wherein strict adherence to the rules of nomenclature would produce confusion or
2538 would not result in nomenclatural stability, exceptions to the rules may be requested of the
2539 Judicial Commission of the ICSP. Requests for Opinions must be accompanied by a
2540 comprehensively documented statement of the relevant facts. The Judicial Commission will
2541 consider all Requests for Opinions and should issue an Opinion in the IJSEM whether or not
2542 the proposal is accepted or rejected. The title of a manuscript should provide a concise
2543 statement of the contents of the manuscript. If an opinion of the Judicial Commission is
2544 requested, "Request for an Opinion" should appear as a subtitle. A Request for an Opinion
2545 submitted in an acceptable form, as determined by peer review, will be published in the
2546 IJSEM. If a request is not supported by adequate evidence, it will be returned to the author
2547 for revision. When an Opinion is challenged, the basis of the challenge must be stated and
2548 supported by a documented statement of the relevant facts. Requests for Opinions will be
2549 considered by the Judicial Commission within 6 months. Further information is found in
2550 Article 8 of the Statutes of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes.

2551 **APPENDIX 9. ADVICE ON THE FORMATION OF NAMES AND ORTHOGRAPHY**

2552

2553 *Note:* This appendix is adapted from [101].

2554

2555 **A. Formation of Compound Names**

2556

2557 (1) Compound names are formed by combining two or more words or word elements,
2558 generally of Latin and/or Classical Greek origin, into one generic name or specific epithet. In
2559 most cases, two word elements are used (e.g., *Thio/bacillus*, *thio/philus*) although, as many
2560 as four elements may be found (e.g., *Ecto/thio/rhodo/spira*). A name or epithet that
2561 combines elements derived from two or more Greek or Latin words should be formed, as far
2562 as practicable, in accordance with classical usage. The combination of word elements follows
2563 four basic rules:

2564

2565 (a) The word stems are used, except for the last word element.

2566

2567 (b) For compound names that contain a noun or adjective in a non-final position, the
2568 connecting vowel is -i- if the preceding word element is of Latin origin; -o- if the preceding
2569 word element is of Greek origin. Greek is more flexible than Latin about the connecting
2570 vowel, and other connecting vowels than -o- may be used if a precedent is found in Greek.

2571

2572 Example: *Corynebacterium*.

2573

2574 Compound specific or subspecific epithets of prokaryotes based on localities can be formed
2575 by concatenating the genitives of the components, if the name of the locality lends itself to
2576 translation into Latin. In such names, the basic noun comes first and is followed by the
2577 descriptive word, which can be an adjective or a noun.

2578

2579 Examples for a noun followed by an adjective: *marisnigri*, *lacusekhoensis*; for two nouns:
2580 *vallismortis*, *lacuslunae*.

2581

2582 Binomial names of plants or animals can be treated in a similar way.

2583

2584 Example: *Sphingomonas bovisgrunniensis*

2585

2586 (c) The connecting vowel is dropped when the following word element starts with a vowel.

2587

2588 (d) Hyphens and diacritic signs are not allowed (see Rules 12a and 64, respectively).

2589

2590 (2) Exemptions exist only for the following cases:

2591

2592 (a) When well-established word elements from chemistry or physics are used, their use in
2593 these sciences should be followed.

2594

2595 Examples: *thio-* for sulfur does not lose the -o- in combinations such as *Thioalkalibacter* and
2596 *thiooxidans* (following the usage in chemistry: thioether, thioester); likewise *radio-* would
2597 not lose the -o- in combinations such as '*Radioalkalibacter*' or '*radioegens*' (following the
2598 usage in physics: radioactive).

2599

2600 (b) As in inorganic chemistry, the vowels -i and -o are used to indicate different oxidation
2601 levels of cations (e.g. ferri, ferro, cupri, cupro, etc.), they do not fall under the Greek/Latin
2602 rules for connection vowels when used in prokaryote names.

2603

2604 Examples: *Ferrimonas* is an Fe³⁺ reducer, while *Ferroglobus* is an Fe²⁺ oxidizer.

2605

2606 (c) In word components such as allo-, bio-, geo-, halo-, hetero-, iso-, meso-, neo-, macro-,
2607 micro-, etc., the connecting vowel -o- may be retained when a component follows that
2608 begins with a vowel (for reasons of clarity or of previous usage).

2609

2610 (d) Greek prepositions and prefixes are not followed by a connecting vowel.

2611

2612 Examples: *Metakosakonia*, *Paracoccus*.

2613

2614 When Greek prepositions and prefixes that end in a vowel (e.g., epi, kata, meta, para) are
2615 attached to word elements that begin with a vowel, the final vowel is elided.

2616

2617 Examples: *Eperythroozoon*, *Paralcaligenes*, *Parendozoicomonas*, *Vibrio metoecus*.

2618

2619 Exceptions are the prepositions *peri* and *pro*, which do not elide.

2620

2621 Example: *Fusobacterium periodonticum*.

2622

2623 Prepositions formed from Greek adjectives (e.g., *poly*, *mega*) and adverbs (e.g., *exo* and *eu*)
2624 also do not elide.

2625

2626 Examples: *Polyangium*, *Clostridium polyendosporum*.

2627

2628 (e) Latin prepositions and prefixes are not followed by a connecting vowel. When Latin
2629 prepositions and prefixes that end in a vowel are attached to word elements that begin with
2630 a vowel, the final vowel is not elided, conforming to the usage in classical Latin.

2631

2632 (f) Adverbs are rarely used in compound words and more extensive use is not
2633 encouraged. For Latin adverbs, the connecting vowel *-i-* may be used; it is dropped if the
2634 following word element starts with a vowel.

2635

2636 Examples: *Paenibacillus*, *Paenalcaligenes*.

2637

2638 **B. Generic (and Subgeneric) Names**

2639

2640 (1) The name of a genus (or subgenus) is a Latin noun in the nominative case. If adjectives or
2641 participles are chosen to form generic names, they have to be transformed into nouns and
2642 handled as such. In some cases, this process has already happened in classical Latin (e.g.,
2643 *Serpens*).

2644

2645 Examples: (i) genuine nouns: *Bacillus*, *Streptococcus*, *Escherichia*, *Azotobacter*; (ii) adjectives
2646 used as nouns: *Haemophilus*, *Halorubrum*, *Methanosalsum*, *Rubritepida*; (iii) participles of
2647 the present used as nouns: *Agarivorans*, *Myceligeners*, *Serpens*; (iv) participles of the
2648 perfect used as nouns: *Amycolata*, *Aquiflexum*, *Gemmata*, *Microlunatus*, *Pectinatus*.

2649

2650 (2) Both Latin and Greek have three genders, i.e., contain nouns of masculine, feminine and
2651 neuter gender. Adjectives associated with nouns follow these in gender. For the correct

2652 formation of specific epithets (as adjectives) it is, therefore, necessary to know the gender of
2653 the genus name.

2654

2655 Examples for some last components in compound generic names are:

2656 (i) of masculine gender: *-arcus*, *-bacillus*, *-bacter*, *-coccus*, *-ger*, *-globus*, *-myces*, *-philus*, *-*
2657 *planes*, *-sinus* and *-vibrio*;

2658 (ii) of feminine gender: *-arcula*, *-cystis*, *-ella*, *-ia*, *-illa*, *-ina*, *-musa*, *-monas*, *-opsis*, *-phaga*, *-*
2659 *pila*, *-rhabdus*, *-sarcina*, *-sphaera*, *-spira*, *-spina*, *-spora*, *-thrix* and *-toga*;

2660 (iii) of feminine or masculine gender: *-cola* (*-incola*);

2661 (iv) of neuter gender: *-bacterium*, *-bactrum*, *-baculum*, *-filamentum*, *-filum*, *-genium*, *-*
2662 *microbium*, *-nema*, *-plasma*, *-spirillum*, *-sporangium* and *-tomaculum*;

2663 (v) of masculine or feminine or neuter gender: *-ferax*, *-fex* and *-vorax*.

2664 Names ending in *-oides* are formed by adding that suffix to the stem of the preceding word
2665 or word element and have the neuter gender. Names ending in *-opsis* (from Gr. fem. n. *opsis*
2666 aspect, appearance) should be treated as feminine. However, generic names ending in *-*
2667 *oides* or *-opsis* assigned to different genders by the authors cannot be corrected
2668 retroactively.

2669

2670 Examples: *Bacteroides* and *Nocardiooides* are masculine.

2671

2672 (3) The gender of a new genus name should be given in the etymology.

2673

2674 **C. Specific (and Subspecific) Epithets**

2675

2676 (1) Rule 12c of the *Code* demands that specific (or subspecific) epithets must be treated in
2677 one of three following ways:

2678 (a) as an adjective that must agree in gender with the generic name;

2679 (b) as noun in apposition in the nominative case;

2680 (c) as a noun in the genitive case.

2681

2682 Examples: (a) *Staphylococcus aureus* (adjective: 'golden'); (b) *Desulfovibrio gigas*

2683 (nominative noun: 'the giant'); (c) *Escherichia coli* (genitive noun: 'of the *colum*=colon').

2684

2685 (2) *Adjectives and participles as specific epithets*

2686 (a) Latin adjectives belong to the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension. Those of the 1st and 2nd
 2687 declension have different endings in the three genders. For adjectives in the 3rd declension,
 2688 the situation is more complicated, as some adjectives don't change with gender, some that
 2689 do change with gender, and some that are identical in the masculine and feminine gender
 2690 and different in the neuter.

2691

2692 Table 1 gives some examples. Note that comparative adjectives are also listed. It is
 2693 recommended always to look up an adjective in a dictionary before using it for the
 2694 formation of a name.

2695

2696

2697 **Table 1. Examples of Latin adjectives**

2698

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	English translation
1st and 2nd declension			
<i>bonus*</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>	good
<i>aureus*</i>	<i>aurea</i>	<i>aureum</i>	golden
<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>	wretched
<i>piger</i>	<i>pigra</i>	<i>pigrum</i>	fat, lazy
<i>ruber</i>	<i>rubra</i>	<i>rubrum</i>	red
<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>	beautiful
3rd declension			
<i>puter</i>	<i>putris</i>	<i>putre</i>	rotten
<i>celer</i>	<i>celeris</i>	<i>celere</i>	rapid
<i>facilis*</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facile</i>	easy
<i>facilior</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facilius</i>	easier
<i>maior</i>	<i>maior</i>	<i>maius</i>	more
<i>minor</i>	<i>minor</i>	<i>minus</i>	less
<i>simplex</i>	<i>simplex</i>	<i>simplex</i>	simple
<i>egenst</i>	<i>egens</i>	<i>egens</i>	needy

2699 *Most common types.

2700 †Infinitive (present) participle used as adjective

2701

2702

2703 (b) Participles are treated as if they are adjectives, i.e., they fall under Rule 12c (1) of the *Code*.

2704

2705 (c) Infinitive (also named 'present') participles in the singular do not change with gender. According to
 2706 the four conjugations of Latin, they end in *-ans* (first conjugation, i.e., *vorans* devouring, from *vorare*
 2707 to devour, *voro* I devour), *-ens* (second conjugation, i.e., *inhibens* inhibiting, from *inhibere* to inhibit,
 2708 *inhibeo* I inhibit), *-ens* (third conjugation, i.e., *exigens* demanding, from *exigere* to demand, *exigo* I
 2709 demand), *-iens* (third conjugation, i.e., *faciens* making, from *facere* to make, *facio*, I make), *-iens*
 2710 (fourth conjugation, i.e., *oboediens* obeying, from *oboedire* to obey, *oboedio* I obey).

2711

2712 (d) Perfect participles change their endings with gender and are handled like adjectives of the first
 2713 and second declension,

2714 e.g., *aggregatus* (masc.), *aggregata* (fem.), *aggregatum* (neut.) (aggregated, from *aggregare* to get
 2715 together), *flexus*, *flexa*, *flexum* (bent, from *flectere* to bend), *latus*, *lata*, *latum* (carried, from the
 2716 irregular verb *ferre* to carry), *diminutus*, *diminuta*, *diminutum* (smashed, from *diminuere* to smash).

2717

2718 (3) *Nominative nouns in apposition as specific epithets*

2719

2720 (a) In grammar, apposition means 'the placing of a word or expression beside another so that the
 2721 second explains and has the same grammatical construction as the first';
 2722 i.e., the added nominative noun has an explanatory specifying function for the generic name. Thus,
 2723 *Desulfovibrio gigas* may be understood as *Desulfovibrio dictus gigas* and translates as '*Desulfovibrio*,
 2724 called the giant'.

2725

2726 (b) All specific epithets ending with the Latin suffixes *-cola* (derived from *incola*, 'the inhabitant,
 2727 dweller') and *-cida* ('the killer') are examples of such nominative nouns in apposition.

2728

2729 4) *Genitive nouns as specific epithets*

2730

2731 (a) The singular genitive of nouns can be found in dictionaries.

2732

2733 (b) If the plural genitive is preferred, as for example in *Lactobacillus plantarum* ('of plants'),
 2734 the declension of the noun should be determined, as plural genitives are different in
 2735 different declensions [see F (3)].

2736

2737 Examples: *Curtobacterium plantarum* (first declension); *Staphylococcus equorum* (second
 2738 declension); *Bifidobacterium dentium* (third declension); examples have not yet been found
 2739 of the fourth and fifth declensions.

2740

2741 **D. Formation of Prokaryote Names from Personal Names**

2742

2743 (1) Persons may be honoured by using their name in forming a generic name or a specific
2744 epithet. However, the *Code* recommends refraining from naming genera, subgenera, species
2745 and subspecies after persons that are not connected with bacteriology or, at least, with
2746 natural science.

2747

2748 (2) It is good practice to ask the person to be honoured by a scientific name for permission
2749 (if she/he is alive). Authors should refrain from naming bacteria after themselves or co-
2750 authors in the same publication [see Recommendation 6 (10)].

2751

2752 (3) *Personal names in generic names*

2753

2754 (a) There are three suggested ways to form a generic name from a personal name: (1)
2755 directly, by adding the ending *-a*, *-ea*, *-nia* or *-ia*; (2) as a diminutive, by adding, usually, the
2756 ending *-ella*, *-iella* or *-nella*. Both kinds are always in the feminine gender. Examples are
2757 provided in Table 2; (3) by using the personal name as a word element in a compound name.
2758 Table 3 provides guidelines for the formation of compound generic names in which the first
2759 word element is derived from a personal name.

2760

2761 **Table 2.** *Ways to form generic names from personal names*

2762

Personal name ending in	Person	Direct formation		Person	Diminutive formation	
		Add ending	Example		Diminutive ending	Example
-a	da Rocha Lima	-ea	<i>Rochalimaea</i>	Shiga	drop a, add -ella	<i>Shigella</i>
-e	Benecke	-a	<i>Beneckea</i>	Bruce	-lla	<i>Brucella</i>
	Hoppe	-ia	<i>Hoppeia</i>			
-i	Nevski	-a	<i>Nevskia</i>	Terasaki	-ella	<i>Terazakiella</i>
-o	Beggiato	-a	<i>Beggiatoa</i>	Seino	-nella	<i>Seinonella</i>
	Kozako	-nia	<i>Kozakonia</i>			
-u	Simidu	-ia	<i>Simiduia</i>	Shimazu	-ella	<i>Shimazuella</i>

-y	Euzéby	-a	<i>Euzebya</i>	Bergey	-ella	<i>Bergeyella</i>
-er	Buchner	-a	<i>Buchnera</i>	Stanier	-ella	<i>Stanierella</i>
	Lister	-ia	<i>Listeria</i>	Turner	-iella	<i>Turneriella</i>
Any consonant	Nocard	-ia	<i>Nocardia</i>	Klebs	-(i)ella	<i>Klebsiella</i>
	De Vos	-ia	<i>Devosia</i>	Salmon	-(i)ella	<i>Salmonella</i>
	Escherich	-ia	<i>Escherichia</i>	Sneath	-(i)ella	<i>Sneathiella</i>

2763

2764

2765 **Table 3.** Formation of compound generic names in which the first word element is derived
 2766 from a personal name. Hypothetical names not yet used in the nomenclature provided as
 2767 examples are in quotation marks. (m) and (f) refer to names of male and female persons,
 2768 respectively. gen. = genitive.

2769

Ending of name	Examples of names and latinized equivalents	Examples of compound names
-a	Ōhara (m) → Oharaeus, gen. Oharaei (or Oharaus, gen. Oharai) (or Oharaius, gen. Oharaii) Volta (m) → Voltaus, gen. Voltai Johanna (f) → Johanna, gen. Johannae Mateka (f) → Matekaia, gen. Matekaiae Julia (f) → Juliaea, gen. Juliaeae	<i>Oharaeibacter</i> <i>"Oharaisarcina"</i> <i>"Oharaiispirillum"</i> <i>"Voltaimonas"</i> <i>"Johannicoccus"</i> <i>"Matekaiibacterium"</i> <i>"Juliaeirhabdus"</i>
-e, -é	Pace (m) → Paceus, gen. Pacci Curie (f) → Curiea, gen. Curieae	<i>Paceibacter</i> <i>"Curieibacterium"</i>
-i	Terasaki (m) → Terasakius, gen. Terasakii Yabuuchi (f) → Yabuuchia, gen. Yabuuchiae	<i>Terasakiispira</i> <i>"Yabuuchiispira"</i>
-o	Augusto Franco-Mora (m) → Franco, gen. Franconis (m) Alternative: Franco → Franconius, gen. Franconii Cato (f) → Catonia, gen. Catoniae	<i>Franconibacter</i> <i>"Franconiimonas"</i> <i>"Catoniispirillum"</i>
-u	Le Testu (m) → Letestuius, gen. Letestuii Plateau-Quénu (f) → Quenuia, gen. Quenuiae	<i>"Letestuiinema"</i> (more correct than <i>Letestuinema</i>)

		<i>"Quenuibaculum"</i>
-y	Ráthay (m) → Rathayus, gen. Rathayi Betty (f) → Bettya, gen. Bettyae	<i>Rathayibacter</i> <i>"Bettyisarcina"</i>
-er	Rubner (m) → Rubnerus, gen. Rubneri Geitler (m) → Geitlerus, gen. Geitleri Koehler (f) → Koehlera, gen. Koehlerae	<i>Rubneribacter</i> <i>Geitlerinema</i> <i>"Koehlerimicrobium"</i>
Any other letter	Rummel (m) → Rummelius, gen. Rummelii Young (m) → Youngius, gen. Youngii Young (f) → Youngia, gen. Youngiae	<i>Rummeliibacillus</i> <i>"Youngiitalea"</i> <i>Youngiibacter</i>

2770

2771

2772 (b) It is not recommended to honour more than one person in one generic name or epithet.

2773

2774 (c) If an organism is named after a person, the name cannot be shortened, e.g., '*Wigglesia*'
2775 after Wigglesworth, '*Stackia*' after Stackebrandt or '*Goodfellia*' after Goodfellow, etc., but
2776 should appear fully. Personal titles (Sir, Lord, Duke, Baron, Graf, Conte, etc.) are not included
2777 in prokaryote names, although they may belong to the name according to the laws of the
2778 respective country. Prefixes and particles should be treated as follows:

2779

2780 (i) The Scottish and Irish patronymic prefixes 'Mac' and 'Mc', meaning 'son of', should be
2781 written 'mac' and be united with the rest of the name (e.g., '*Macdonellia*' or '*macdonellii*'
2782 after MacDonell; '*Macginleya*' or *macginleyi* after McGinley).

2783

2784 (ii) The Irish patronymic prefix 'O' should be united with the rest of the name or omitted
2785 (e.g., '*Oconnoria*' or '*Connoria*' or '*oconnorii*' or '*connorii*' after O'Connor).

2786

2787 (iii) A prefix consisting of an article (e.g., le, la, l', les, el, il, lo, de), or containing an article
2788 (e.g. du, de la, des, del, della, do, da), may be omitted or united to the name (e.g.,
2789 *Rochalimaea* after da Rocha-Lima; *Leclercia* or '*leclercii*' after Le Clerc; *Leminorella* or
2790 *leminorii* after Le Minor; '*Loprestia*' or '*loprestii*' after Lo Presti, *Deleya* or *deleyi* after De Ley,
2791 *Devosia* or '*devosii*' after De Vos).

2792

2793 (iv) The Dutch prefix 'van' and the German prefix 'von' may be omitted or united to the
2794 name (e.g., *Leeuwenhoekella* after van Leeuwenhoek, *itersonii* after van Iterson, *prowazekii*

2795 after von Prowazek, '*Vannielia*' or *vannielii* after van Niel; '*Vandertoornia*' or '*vandertoornii*'
 2796 or '*Toornia*' or '*toornii*' after van der Toorn, '*Vandammella*' or '*vandammei*' after
 2797 Vandamme).

2798

2799 (v) The adjective Saint (San, Sankt, Santo/Santa, Sveti, etc.) as part of some family names
 2800 may be omitted or united to the name (e.g., '*Exuperya*' or '*exuperyi*' after Saint-Exupéry,
 2801 *santarosai* after Santa Rosa.

2802

2803 (e) Generic names or specific epithets can also be formed from forenames (first names,
 2804 given names, Christian names), i.e., not from the family name.

2805

2806 Examples: *Erwinia* was named after Erwin F. Smith; the first name *Arletta* appears in
 2807 *Staphylococcus arlettae* (N.L. gen. n. *arlettae* of Arletta, named after Arlette van de
 2808 Kerckhove). First names may be chosen in order to avoid rather long family names or
 2809 unusually long (hyphenated) double names.

2810

2811 (f) In cases of very frequent family names where the honoured person is not easily
 2812 identifiable, first and family name may be contracted without connecting vowel or
 2813 hyphenation, but otherwise treated like a single family name.

2814

2815 Examples: *Owenweeksia*, *Elizabethkingia*.

2816

2817 (4) Personal names in specific epithets

2818

2819 (a) Two possibilities exist to form specific epithets from personal names: the adjective
 2820 form and the genitive noun form. The personal names receive appropriate endings
 2821 according to the gender of the generic name, as indicated in Table 4. Thus, an epithet is
 2822 formed that has the meaning of 'pertaining/relating/belonging to... (the person)'.

2823

2824

2825 **Table 4.** *Formation of specific epithets from personal names in the adjective form*¹

2826

2827 ¹Names in quotation marks are hypothetical examples.

2828

Ending of name	Example family name	Add the endings for gender			Examples
		Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
consonant	Brock Colwell Pasteur	-ianus	-iana	-ianum	<i>Thermus brockianus</i> <i>Alteromonas colwelliana</i> <i>Clostridium pasteurianum</i>
-a	Migula Loya	-nus	-na	-num	<i>Aneurinibacillus migulanus</i> <i>Thalassomonas loyana</i>
-e	Love	-anus	-ana	-anum	<i>Porphyromonas loveana</i>
-i	Palleroni Li	-anus	-ana	-anum	<i>Pseudomonas palleroniana</i> <i>Cyclobacterium lianum</i>
-o	'Guerrero'	-anus	-ana	-anum	"guerreroanus"
-u	'Manescu'	-anus	-ana	-anum	"manescuanus"
-y	Olley	-anus	-ana	-anum	<i>Shewanella olleyana</i>

2829

2830

2831 (b) When the genitive of a Latinized personal name is formed for a specific epithet, the
2832 sex of the person to be honoured may be taken into consideration, as indicated in Table 5.

2833

2834

2835 **Table 5.** Formation of specific epithets from personal names as genitive nouns

2836

2837 Names in quotation marks are hypothetical examples.

2838

Ending of name	Add for female	Example female person	Add for male	Example male person
-a	-e (1st declension)	Yano Ikuya, <i>yanoikuyae</i>	-e (classic)	Volta, <i>voltae</i>
	-eae	Pamela Lee Oxley, <i>pamelaeae</i>	-i	Oshima, <i>oshimai</i>
	-iae	Zhuhua Wu, <i>zhuhuaiae</i>	-ei	Mukohata, <i>mukohataei</i>
			-ii	Vora, <i>voraii</i>

-e, -é	-ae	Curie, <i>curieae</i>	-i	Beveridge, <i>beveridgei</i>
-i	-ae	Yabuuchi, <i>yabuuchiae</i>	-i	Giovannoni, <i>giovannonii</i>
-o	-niae	Cato, <i>catoniae</i>	-nis	Hirano, <i>hiranonis</i>
-u	-iae	Plateau-Quénu, <i>quenuiae</i>	-ii	Brisou, <i>brisouii</i>
-y	-ae	Olley, <i>olleyae</i>	-i	De Ley, <i>deleyi</i>
-as	drop -as, add -ae	Thomas, ' <i>thomae</i> '	drop -as, add -ae	Cosmas, " <i>cosmae</i> "
	-iae	Liceras de Hidalgo, <i>liceasiae</i>	-ii	Chagas, <i>chagasii</i>
-er	-ae	Miller, <i>millerae</i>	-i	Stutzer, <i>stutzeri</i>
any other letter	-iae	Gordon, <i>gordoniae</i>	-ii	Pfennig, <i>pfennigii</i>

2839

2840

2841 On the basis of classical, medieval and Neo-Latin usage, any of the forms of Latinization
 2842 listed in Table 5 may be chosen. As evident from Table 5, the formation of specific epithets
 2843 from personal names, as genitive nouns, poses certain problems only with names ending in -
 2844 *a* and -*o*.

2845

2846 (c) The recommendations and rules for genus names, as given above [D (3), (c)–(f)], are also
 2847 applicable for specific epithets. Appropriate examples are given there.

2848

2849 **E. Formation of Prokaryote Names from Geographical Names**

2850

2851 (1) The formation of prokaryote names from geographical names has no geopolitical
 2852 meaning, i.e., such names cannot be used to express geopolitical claims (see General
 2853 Consideration 8).

2854

2855 (2) Unlike epithets derived from personal names, epithets created on the basis of
 2856 geographical names should not be formed as nouns in the genitive case, but as adjectives.
 2857 They usually are constructed by adding the ending *-ensis* (masculine or feminine gender) or -
 2858 *ense* (neuter gender) to the geographical name and in agreement with the latter's gender.
 2859 Only if the name of the locality ends in *-a* or *-e* or *-en*, are these letters dropped before
 2860 adding *-ensis/-ense* (e.g., *jenensis* from Jena, *californiensis* from California, *drentensis* from

2861 Drente, *bremensis* from Bremen). If the locality's name ends in *-o*, the ending becomes -
 2862 *nensis/-nense* (e.g., the name of the Japanese city Sapporo: *sapporonensis*, *sapporonense*).

2863

2864 (3) Quite a number of localities in the Old World (Europe, Asia, Africa) have classical Greek,
 2865 Latin or medieval Latin names and adjectives derived from these: *aegyptius* (Egypt),
 2866 *africanus* (Africa), *arabicus* (Arabia), *asiaticus* (Asia), *balticus* (Baltic Sea), *bavaricus* (Bavaria),
 2867 *bretonicus* (Brittany), *britannicus* (Britain), *europaes* (Europe), *frisius* (Friesland), *gallicus*
 2868 (France), *germanicus* (Germany), *graecus* (Greece), *hellenicus* (Hellas, classical Greece),
 2869 *helveticus* (Switzerland), *hibernicus* (Ireland), *hispanicus* (Spain), *hungaricus* (Hungary),
 2870 *ibericus* (Spain/Portugal, the Iberian peninsula), *indicus* (India), *italicus* (Italy), *mediterraneus*
 2871 (Mediterranean Sea), *persicus* (Persia, Iran), *polonus* (Poland), *rhenanus* (Rhineland),
 2872 *romanus* (Rome), *saxonicus* (Saxony), etc. Neo-Latin names were given also to many other
 2873 non-European parts of the world, so adjectives like *americanus* (America), *antarcticus*
 2874 ('southern' in classical Latin) (Antarctica), *australicus* (Australia), *cubanus* (Cuba), *mexicanus*
 2875 (Mexico), *japonicus* (Japan), etc. were introduced. Wherever such older adjectives exist, they
 2876 may be used as specific epithets to indicate geographical origins.

2877

2878 (4) European and Mediterranean cities and places of classical times may have had quite
 2879 different names than today, e.g., *Lucentum* (Alicante, Spain), *Argentoratum* (Strasbourg,
 2880 France), *Lutetia* (Paris, France), *Traiectum* (Utrecht, Netherlands), *Ratisbona* (Regensburg,
 2881 Germany), *Eboracum* (York, UK), *Londinium* (London, UK) and *Hafnia* (København, Denmark),
 2882 which lead to the respective adjectives *lucentensis*, *argentoratensis*, *lutetiensis*, *traiectensis*,
 2883 *ratisbonensis*, *eboracensis*, *londiniensis* and *hafniensis*. Numerous additional examples are
 2884 listed in https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Lists_of_Latin_place_names (accessed:
 2885 19.12.2021). Alternatively, the Neo-Latin adjectives of the modern names may be used:
 2886 *alicantensis*, *strasbourgensis*, *parisensis*, *utrechtensis*, *regensburgensis*, *yorkensis*,
 2887 *londonensis*, *kobenhavnensis*, respectively.

2888

2889 (5) Many localities (mostly lakes, rivers, seas, islands, capes, rocks, mountains or valleys, but
 2890 also some cities and towns) have names that consist of two words, usually an adjective and a
 2891 noun (e.g., Deep Lake, Black Sea, Red River, Rio Grande, Long Island, Blue Mountain, Baton
 2892 Rouge, Santa Cruz, Saint Germain, Sankt Georgen, etc.) or two nouns (e.g., Death Valley,
 2893 Lake Windermere, Loch Ness, Martha's Vineyard, Ayers Rock, Woods Hole, Cape Cod, Monte
 2894 Carlo, etc.). The formation of specific epithets from the names of such localities may pose a

2895 problem, as the use of the adjectival suffix *-ensis*, *-ense* may lead to rather strange looking or
 2896 awkward constructions, such as '*deeplakensis*' or '*bluemountainense*', although they would
 2897 be formally correct. If the name of a locality lends itself to translation into Latin, specific
 2898 epithets may be formed, as well as genitive nouns of the two components and
 2899 concatenating them without hyphenation, such as the existing *lacusprofundi* (of Deep Lake),
 2900 *marisnigri* (of the Black Sea), *marismortui* (of the Dead Sea) or, of two nouns, *vallismortis* (of
 2901 Death Valley). See also Section A (1) (b) above.

2902

2903 (6) The inclusion of articles (such as, *the, el, o, il, le, la, a, de, der, die, das, den, het* or their
 2904 plurals *the, los, las, os, as, les, ils, gli, le, de, die, 's*, etc.) as they are used for locations in
 2905 several languages (e.g., La Paz, El Ferrol, El Alamein, Le Havre, The Netherlands, Die Schweiz,
 2906 Den Haag, 's Hertogenbosch, Los Angeles, etc.) should be avoided.

2907

2908 **F. Formation of Names for Prokaryotes Living in Association or Symbiosis with Other Biota**

2909

2910 (1) For the formation of names for prokaryotes that live in association or symbiosis with
 2911 plants, fungi, animals or other prokaryotes, it is important to know the exact meaning of the
 2912 nomenclatural name of such a partner and how it was formed (adjective, genitive noun,
 2913 etc.).

2914

2915 (2) The most common way of forming such specific epithets is the use of the genitive
 2916 case of the generic name of the associated organism in question, e.g., *suis, equi, bovis,*
 2917 *muscae, muris, aquilae, falconis, gypis, elephantis* (of the pig, horse, cow, fly, mouse, eagle,
 2918 falcon, vulture, elephant), or *fagi, quercus* (4th declension genitive, spoken with long u),
 2919 *castanae, aesculi, rosae, liliae* (of the beech, oak, chestnut, horse chestnut, rose, lily).

2920

2921 (3) Alternatively, the genitive of the plural is recommended, especially if several species
 2922 of the associated (usually) eukaryotic genus house the prokaryote species in question. To
 2923 form the plural genitive, one needs to know the stem and declension of the word. The
 2924 following examples may be of assistance:

2925 (a) 1st declension: *-arum* (*muscarum*, of flies, *rosarum*, of roses);

2926 (b) 2nd declension: *-orum* (*equorum*, of horses, *pinorum*, of pines);

2927 (c) 3rd declension (consonant stems): *-um* (*leonum*, of lions, *leguminum*, of legumes);

2928 (d) 3rd declension (vocal and mixed stems): *-ium* (*felium*, of cats, *ruminantium*, of
 2929 ruminants);

2930 (e) 4th declension: *-um* (*quercum*, of oaks);

2931 (f) 5th declension: *-rum* (*scabierum*, of different forms of scabies, a skin disease).

2932 *Note.* Be aware of irregular forms such as *bos* (the cow), genitive *bovis*, plural genitive *boum*;
2933 *canis* (the dog), genitive *canis*, plural genitive *canum*. Use dictionaries.

2934

2935 **G. Names Originating from Languages Other than Latin or Classical Greek**

2936

2937 (1) According to Recommendation 6(3), Words from languages other than Latin or Classical
2938 Greek should be avoided as long as equivalents exist in Latin or Greek or can be constructed
2939 by combining word elements from these two languages.

2940

2941 Example: The formation of the epithet *simbae* from the East African Swahili word *simba*,
2942 lion, for a *Mycoplasma* species contravenes Recommendation 6(3).

2943

2944 Only Latin case endings are permitted. Greek endings should be transformed into Latin
2945 endings.

2946

2947 (2) When a word from another language is used, the word stem should be identified before
2948 Latinization.

2949

2950 Example: The Arabic word 'alkali' (*al-qaliy*, the ashes of saltwort) from which the element
2951 kalium (K; English, potassium) received its name. Since the *-i* at the end of the word belongs
2952 to the stem, it is wrong to speak and write, of alcalophilic, instead of alkaliphilic microbes.
2953 Formally *alkaliiphilus* (*-a*, *-um*) is then more correct than *alkaliphilus* (*-a*, *-um*), etc., but in
2954 view of the many precedents in the past, addition of a connecting vowel after *alkali-* is not
2955 recommended.

2956

2957 (3) Typical usages of other languages should not be carried over into Latin.

2958

2959 Example: The English suffix *-philic* (e.g., hydrophilic: friendly to water, water-loving) is an
2960 English transformation of the Latin *-philus*, *-a*, *-um* (originating from Greek *philos*, friendly).
2961 Therefore, the ending *-philicus* should be avoided and *-philus* should be used instead.

2962

2963 (4) National foods or fermentation products (e.g., sake, tofu, miso, yogurt, kvas, kefir,
 2964 pombe, pulque, aiva, etc.) often do not have equivalent Latin names, although
 2965 microorganisms may be named after such foods or food products if found in them or cause
 2966 fermentations. These names should not be used unaltered just as specific epithets in the
 2967 form of nominative nouns in apposition. They are properly latinized by forming a neuter
 2968 noun by adding *-um* (e.g., *sakeum*, *tofuum*, *kefirum*, *pombeum*, etc.) and the use of the
 2969 genitive of that (ending *-i*) in the specific epithet (e.g., *sakei*, *tofui*, *kefiri*, *pombe*, etc.).
 2970

2971 **H. Formation of Prokaryote Names from Names of Elements and Compounds Used in**
 2972 **Chemistry and Pharmacy**

2973

2974 (1) The vast majority of names of chemicals are latinized as neuter nouns of the 2nd
 2975 declension with nominatives ending *-um*, genitives in *-i*. The following groups belong in this
 2976 category:

2977 (a) Most of the chemical elements, with the exception of carbon (L. *carbo*, *carbonis*)
 2978 phosphorus (L. *phosphorus*, *phosphori*) and sulfur (L. *sulfur*, *sulfuris*), have the ending *-(i)um*
 2979 with the genitive ending in *-(i)i*; nitrogen may also be called *azotum* besides *nitrogenium*,
 2980 *calcium* may also be called *calx* (genitive *calcis*).

2981 (b) Names of chemical and biochemical compounds ending in *-ide* (including anions), *-in*, *-*
 2982 *ane*, *-ene*, *-one*, *-ol* (only non-alcoholic compounds), *-ose* (sugars), *-an* (polysaccharides) and
 2983 *-ase* (enzymes) are latinized by adding the ending *-um* or by replacing the *-e* at the end by *-*
 2984 *um* as appropriate.

2985 (c) Acids are named by *acidum* (L. neuter noun, acid), followed by a descriptive neuter
 2986 adjective, e.g., sulfurous acid *acidum sulfurosum*, sulfuric acid *acidum sulfuricum*, acetic acid
 2987 *acidum aceticum*.

2988

2989 (2) The second largest category of chemicals are treated as neuter nouns of the 3rd
 2990 declension: These end in *-ol* (the alcohols), *-al* (aldehydes), *-er* (ethers, esters) and *-yl*
 2991 (organic radicals); latinization does not change their names at the end, whereas the genitive
 2992 is formed by adding *-is*.

2993

2994 (3) Anions ending in *-ite* and *-ate* are treated as masculine nouns of the 3rd declension. The
 2995 English ending *-ite* is latinized to *-is*, with the genitive *-itis*, e.g., nitrite becomes *nitris*, *nitritis*.

2996 The English ending *-ate* is latinized to *-as*, with the genitive *-atis*, e.g., nitrate becomes *nitras*,
 2997 *nitratīs*.

2998

2999 (4) Only a few chemicals have names that are latinized in the 1st declension as feminine
 3000 nouns, ending in *-a*, with genitive *-ae*. Besides chemicals that always had names ending in *-a*
 3001 (like urea), these are chemicals found in classical and medieval Latin, such as gentian
 3002 (*gentiana*) and camphor (*camphora*), as well as modern drugs, wherein the Latin names
 3003 were formed by adding *-a*, such as the French ergot, becoming *ergota* in Latin. An important
 3004 group of this category are alkaloids and other organic bases, such as nucleic acid bases and
 3005 amino acids, with English names ending in *-ine*. In Neo-Latin, this ending is *-ina*, with the
 3006 genitive *-inae*.

3007

3008 Examples: *betaina*, *-ae*; *atropina*, *-ae*; *adenina*, *-ae*; *alanina*, *-ae*.

3009

3010 (5) The word stems and genitives of latinized chemical names are the basis for their use in
 3011 prokaryote generic names and specific epithets. In principle, they are then treated like any
 3012 other word elements.

3013

3014 I. Arbitrary Names

3015

3016 (1) The basis for arbitrary names are Rules 10a and 12c of the *Code*: ‘genus names or specific
 3017 epithets may be taken from any source and may even be composed in an arbitrary manner’.
 3018 They should, however, be treated as Latin. Often they are vocalized abbreviations or
 3019 contractions of names. Examples: *Cedecea*, *Afipia*, *Kordia*, *Kribbella*, *Waddlia* and *Desemzia*,
 3020 that were derived from the acronyms CDC (Centers for Disease Control), AFIP (Armed Forces
 3021 Institute of Pathology), KORDI (Korea Ocean Research and Development Institute), KRIBB
 3022 (Korean Research Institute of Bioscience and Biotechnology), WADDL (Washington Animal
 3023 Disease Diagnostic Laboratory) and DSMZ (Deutsche Sammlung von Mikroorganismen und
 3024 Zellkulturen), respectively. Another example is *Simkania* (contracted from the name Simona
 3025 Kahane). Examples for arbitrary specific epithets are (*Burkholderia*) *unamae*, derived from
 3026 the acronym UNAM (Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México), (*Brevundimonas*) *nasdae*,
 3027 derived from the acronym NASDA (National Space Development Agency of Japan), and
 3028 (*Flavobacterium*) *micromati* derived from the abbreviation MICROMAT (MICROMAT project
 3029 ‘Biodiversity of Microbial Mats in Antarctica’).

3030 Arbitrary specific epithets based on acronyms, e.g., of names of research institutions,
3031 universities, etc. are preferentially formed as nouns in the genitive case. Use of adjectives
3032 with *-(i)anus*, *-(i)ana*, *(i)anum* endings is possible, as well.

3033

3034 (2) When proposing arbitrary names or epithets, authors should aim at short, elegant, easily
3035 spelled and pronounced ones.

3036 *Note.* With arbitrary genus names, the gender should also be indicated.

3037

3038 References 102-117 are intended to be informative and helpful, but are not an official part
3039 of Appendix 9.

3040 **APPENDIX 10. INFRASUBSPECIFIC SUBDIVISIONS**

3041

3042 The designations of these taxa are not covered by the Rules of this *Code*, but this Appendix is
3043 included to encourage conformity and to clarify the application of these designations (see
3044 Rule 14a, b).

3045

3046 **A. Definitions**

3047

3048 The term **infrasubspecific subdivision** (or division) has been used in two ways, i.e., to denote
3049 both terms and taxa. It is preferable to distinguish them as given below. **Infrasubspecific**
3050 **“subdivision”** has been used rather than “division” to avoid any confusion with the
3051 taxonomic category “division” (*divisio*) used in the botanical and the zoological
3052 nomenclature.

3053

3054 *Note.* Infrasubspecific subdivisions are not arranged in any order of rank and may overlap
3055 one another.

3056

3057 (1) *Infrasubspecific taxa.* An **infrasubspecific taxon** is one strain or a set of strains showing
3058 the same or similar properties, and treated as a taxonomic group.

3059

3060 Example: *Staphylococcus aureus* phagovar 81.

3061

3062 The sets of properties used may be of a similar kind but are not necessarily the same.

3063

3064 Example: The susceptibility to a different phage may be used to define another phagovar of
3065 *Staphylococcus aureus*, e.g., phagovar 42D.

3066

3067 Infrasubspecific taxa based on different sets of properties may overlap; e.g., one serovar
3068 may contain strains belonging to different phagovars.

3069

3070 Example: *Salmonella typhi* serovars, phagovars, and biovars.

3071

3072 (2) *Infrasubspecific terms.* An **infrasubspecific term** is used to refer to the kinds of taxa
3073 below subspecies.

3074

3075 Examples: serovar, chemovar, *forma specialis*.

3076

3077 If a species has not been divided into subspecies, the infrasubspecific terms may be applied
3078 to other subdivisions within that species. The subdivisions so named would still be
3079 infrasubspecific subdivisions for nomenclatural purposes until they may be raised to
3080 subspecific or specific rank.

3081

3082 Example: Serovars of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*.

3083

3084 (3) *Use of other terms.* **Infrasubspecific form** has been used to refer to a bacterial strain,
3085 although this use should be avoided.

3086

3087 A **culture** of prokaryotes is a population of bacterial cells in a given place at a given time,
3088 e.g., in this test tube or on that agar plate. It may have a long duration, e.g., desiccated
3089 cultures.

3090

3091 A **clone** is a population of prokaryotic cells derived from a single parent cell.

3092

3093 A **strain** is made up of the descendants of a single isolation in pure culture. A strain is usually
3094 made up of a succession of cultures and is often derived from a single colony. The number of
3095 cells which gave rise to the original colony is often unknown. Most prokaryotic strains are
3096 not known to be clones.

3097

3098 **Individual** is a term with little meaning in bacteriology although it has been applied to a
3099 single prokaryotic cell or to a bacterial strain; it is best to avoid the use of this term.

3100

3101 **B. Infrasubspecific Terms**

3102

3103 The table below contains some of the terms that are commonly used; the preferred name
3104 appears in the first column. The introduction of the suffix “**-var**” or “**-form**” to replace “-
3105 type” is recommended to avoid confusion with the strict use of the term “type” to mean
3106 nomenclatural type (see Rule 15).

3107

3108 *Infrasubspecific terms*

3109

Preferred name	Synonym(s)	Notes
Biovar	Biotype, physiological type	Biochemical or physiological properties
Chemoform	Chemotype	Chemical constitution
Chemovar		Production or amount of production of a particular chemical
Cultivar		A cultivated strain with particular properties
<i>forma specialis</i> (abbreviation, f.sp.)	Special form	A parasitic, symbiotic, or commensal microorganism distinguished primarily by adaptation to a particular host or habitat. Named preferably by the scientific name of the host, in the genitive case
Genomovar	Genovar, genomic group	Used to designate distinct intraspecific groups based on genomic comparisons, that cannot be phenotypically distinguished
Morphovar	Morphotype	Morphological characteristics
Pathovar	Pathotype	Disease responses in one or more hosts. For recommendations on designating pathovars and use of designations when reviving names, see [53] in Appendix 3
Phagovar	Phagotype, lysotype	Reactions to bacteriophage
Phase		Restricted to well-defined stages of naturally occurring alternating variations
Serovar	Serotype	Antigenic characteristics
State		Colonial variants, e.g., rough, smooth, mucoid (may be defined antigenically)

3110

3111 The term “**type**” in prokaryotic biology (e.g., phenotype, genotype, serotype, etc.) should

3112 not be confused with the strictly nomenclatural use of the term, type (Principle 5 and

3113 Chapter 3, Section 4).

3114

3115 The term “**group**” is informal and has no nomenclatural standing. It may prove useful to

3116 designate informally a set of organisms having certain characteristics in common, provided

3117 that it is used with care and exact definition to avoid ambiguity. It should not be used to

3118 avoid the use of the correct name of a taxon such as genus or species. However, it may be
3119 useful when the bacteriologist does not wish to give a formal name to a set of prokaryotes
3120 until further studies have been made but wishes to publish his results and seek the opinion
3121 of others.

3122

3123 Example: "IID group," later named *Cardiobacterium hominis*.

3124

3125 **C. Nomenclature of Intrasubspecific Taxa**

3126

3127 An **intrasubspecific taxon** is designated or cited by the name of the species followed by the
3128 intrasubspecific term used to designate this intrasubspecific subdivision followed by the
3129 intrasubspecific designation.

3130

3131 Example: *Staphylococcus aureus* phagovar 81.

3132

3133 Reference strains of intrasubspecific taxa may be designated.

3134

3135 There are many ways that intrasubspecific taxa may be designated; among these are the
3136 following: latinized words, e.g., *cerealis* in *Xanthomonas translucens* f.sp. *cerealis*; vernacular
3137 names or words, e.g., rough phase; numbers, letters, or formulae, e.g., phagovar 42D in
3138 *Staphylococcus aureus* phagovar 42D.

3139 .

3140 **D. Nomenclature of Strains**

3141

3142 A strain may be designated in any manner, e.g., by the name of an individual, by a locality, or
3143 by a number. Strain designations (e.g., strain collection accession numbers) should be
3144 preserved to ensure the 'chain of custody' of prokaryotes that are presumed to be the same
3145 but may demonstrate different features.

3146 **APPENDIX 11. THE PROVISIONAL STATUS *CANDIDATUS***

3147

3148 Introduction of the status called *Candidatus* was first proposed by Murray and Schleifer in
3149 1994 [118]. The provisional status *Candidatus* was intended for putative taxa of any rank
3150 that could not be described in sufficient details to warrant establishment of a novel taxon,
3151 usually because of the absence of a pure culture. Following discussions of the International
3152 Committee on Systematics of Bacteria (ICSB; now the International Committee on
3153 Systematics of Prokaryotes, ICSP) [119], further guidelines were published for *Candidatus*
3154 taxa in 1995 [120].

3155

3156 This status should be used for describing prokaryotic taxa for which more than a nucleic acid
3157 sequence is available but for which the requirements for valid publication of a name
3158 according to the *Code* are not met.

3159

3160 The following information should be included in the description of a *Candidatus* taxon:

3161 (a) Genomic information, i.e., nucleic acid sequences apt to determine the phylogenetic
3162 position of the organism.

3163 (b) All information so far available on structure and morphology (appropriate illustration),
3164 physiology and metabolism, reproductive features, the natural environment, in which the
3165 organism can be identified by *in situ* hybridization or similar techniques for cell detection
3166 and identification, and any other available and suitable information.

3167

3168 A name of an organism in the status of *Candidatus* consists of the word *Candidatus*, followed
3169 by a name, based on one of the ranks defined in this *Code* (species, genus, family, etc.),
3170 formed in accordance with the nomenclature rules of the *Code* and its etymology appendix
3171 (Appendix 9); see also [121].

3172

3173 Examples: *Candidatus* Methanoflorentaceae (family rank), *Candidatus* Methanoflorens
3174 (genus rank), *Candidatus* Methanoflorens stordalenmirensis (species rank).

3175 Note that the word *Candidatus*, but not the name that follows, is printed in italics.

3176

3177 *Candidatus* name is, by definition, a preliminary name and, therefore, has no standing in
3178 prokaryote nomenclature. A proposal to include names of *Candidatus* taxa under Rules of

3179 the *ICNP* and to grant nomenclatural priority to *Candidatus* names [122,123] was rejected by
3180 the ICSP in 2020 [124].

3181

3182 Murray and Stackebrandt [120] proposed compiling a list of *Candidatus* taxa based on
3183 requests for inclusion submitted by the authors describing them. Starting 2020, lists of
3184 proposed *Candidatus* taxa have been published periodically in the IJSEM as a service to the
3185 scientific community [125-128]. Rather than a listing of a 'codified record' of each
3186 *Candidatus* taxon (as suggested in [120]), these lists, compiled by the IJSEM List Editors,
3187 include the etymologies and references to the publications in which the names were
3188 proposed. If necessary, names were corrected, based on the rules of the *Code* and its
3189 Appendix 9 [125,127,128]. Those corrections are proposals only, and alternative corrected
3190 names are possible. The *Candidatus* lists published in the IJSEM are not to be considered as
3191 'Approved Lists of Names' that may serve as Validation Lists if, in the future, the ICSP may
3192 decide to include *Candidatus* taxa under the Rules of the *Code*. At the time of publication of
3193 the first two *Candidatus* lists in the IJSEM, the rank of phylum was not included in the *Code*,
3194 and, therefore, names of *Candidatus* phyla were not listed. As the ICSP has voted to include
3195 the rank of phylum in the *Code* [5], the List Editors of the IJSEM intend to prepare also an
3196 initial list of *Candidatus* phyla. Authors and other individuals wishing to have new names of
3197 *Candidatus* taxa included in future lists should send an electronic copy of the published
3198 paper to the IJSEM List Editors.

3199

3200 When an organism of the status *Candidatus* is later isolated and the pure culture sufficiently
3201 described, the name can be submitted for validation according to the Rules of the *Code*. The
3202 former *Candidatus* name is then deleted from the *Candidatus* list.

3203 **APPENDIX 12. THE VAN NIEL INTERNATIONAL PRIZE**

3204

3205 The van Niel International Prize, established in 1986 by Professor V. B. D. Skerman of The
3206 University of Queensland, honours the contribution of scholarship in the field of
3207 microbiology by Professor Cornelis Bernardus van Niel.

3208

3209 A history of the prize and a list of recipients from 1986 until 2014 is presented in Appendix
3210 12 of the 2008 Revision of the *ICNP* [1].

3211

3212 **2014–2017 (Not Awarded)**

3213

3214 **2017–2020 *van Niel Prize recipient, Tanja Woyke***

3215

3216 The Senate of The University of Queensland, on the recommendation of the Executive Board
3217 of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes, is pleased to present the van
3218 Niel International Prize for Studies in Bacterial Systematics for the triennium 2017–2020 to
3219 Dr Tanja Woyke in recognition of her contributions made to the field of bacterial systematics
3220 [129].

3221 APPENDIX 13. ACTIVITIES OF THE CONGRESSES

3222

3223 The minutes of the meetings of the International Congress for Microbiology (and later, the
3224 International Congress of Bacteriology and Applied Microbiology) of the International Union
3225 of Microbiological Societies contain a detailed history of the evolution of this code of
3226 nomenclature. A summary of this historical material is presented in Appendix 13 of the 2008
3227 Revision of the ICNP [1]. Minutes of the ICSP plenary meetings held since 2014 are published
3228 in the IJSEM and are summarized below.

3229

3230 7th Congress of European Microbiologists**3231 Valencia, Spain, 2019**

3232

3233 Meetings of the ICSP were held in July 2017 in conjunction with the 7th Congress of European
3234 Microbiologists [130].

3235

3236 Reports were received from the Officers of the ICSP and from the JC.

3237 A preprint version of the *International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes* was noted to
3238 have been published online. A new publishing contract between the Microbiology Society
3239 and IUMS/ICSP has been signed. Negotiations have been ongoing between the authors of
3240 the new revision of the *Code* and the Microbiology Society about the typesetting and the
3241 format in which the type-set version will be published in the IJSEM.

3242

3243 A revision of the ICSP Statutes, proposed by the EB, was approved. The major changes are in
3244 Article 2a (Term of full members); Article 4 (Term of officers); Article 7 (Secretaries serving
3245 as ex officio voting members of the EB); Article 10 (Change of the JC quorum of votes for a
3246 favourable decision regarding an Opinion); and Article 13b (Clarification of the functions of
3247 the Editorial Board of the IJSEM regarding the *Code*).

3248

3249 Reports were received from *ad hoc* working groups on (1) the nomenclature of uncultured
3250 organisms; (2) improving the IJSEM; (3) the position of the ICSP on the Nagoya protocol; (4)
3251 education and outreach initiatives on systematics; (5) the organization and structure of the
3252 ICSP.

3253

3254 8th Congress of European Microbiologists

3255 **Glasgow, Scotland, UK, 2019**

3256

3257 A mini-plenary open meeting of the ICSP was held on 11 July 2019 in conjunction with the 8th
3258 Congress of European Microbiologists, in Glasgow, Scotland [131]. The meeting was
3259 attended by 13 ICSP members or their alternates and four guests.

3260

3261 The revised version of the statutes of the ICSP, as detailed in Whitman *et al.*, *Int J Syst Evol*
3262 *Microbiol* 2019;69:584-593, were approved by electronic vote of the ICSP in June 2019 and
3263 so were noted to now be effective.

3264

3265 Reports were presented by the working groups on education and outreach and about the
3266 impact of the Nagoya protocol on the availability of type material. The status of the lists of
3267 *Candidatus* names, the preparation of which is in an advanced stage, was discussed.

3268

3269 Discussions were held about the proposal to allow gene sequences as type material. These
3270 discussions will be continued in future meetings of the ICSP.

3271 **Funding information**

3272 The authors received no specific grant from any funding agency.

3273

3274 **Conflicts of interest**

3275 The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

3276 **References**

3277

- 3278 **1. Parker CT, Tindall BJ, Garrity GM.** International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes
3279 (2008 Revision). *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2019;69:S1–S111.
- 3280 **2. Oren A, Arahal DR, Rosselló-Móra R, Sutcliffe IR, Moore ERB.** Preparing a revision of the
3281 International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3282 2021;71:004598.
- 3283 **3. Whitman WB, Bull C, Busse H-J, Fournier P-E, Oren A, et al.** Request for revision of the
3284 Statutes of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol*
3285 *Microbiol* 2019;69:584–593.
- 3286 **4. Oren A, Arahal DR, Rosselló-Móra R, Sutcliffe IC, Moore EJB.** Public discussion on a
3287 proposed revision of the International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst*
3288 *Evol Microbiol* 2022;71:004918.
- 3289 **5. Oren A, Arahal DR, Rosselló-Móra R, Sutcliffe IC, Moore EJB.** Emendation of Rules 5b, 8,
3290 15, and 22 of the International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes to include the rank
3291 of phylum. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2021;71:004851
- 3292 **6. Oren A, Arahal DR, Rosselló-Móra R, Sutcliffe IR, Moore ERB.** Emendation of General
3293 Consideration 5 and Rules 18a, 24a, and 30 of the International Code of Nomenclature
3294 of Prokaryotes to resolve the status of the *Cyanobacteria* in the prokaryotic
3295 nomenclature. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2021;71:004939.
- 3296 **7. Turland NJ, Wiersema JH, Barrie FR, Greuter W, Hawksworth DL, et al. (eds).**
3297 *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants (Shenzhen Code)*
3298 *adopted by the Nineteenth International Botanical Congress Shenzhen, China, July 2017.*
3299 *Regnum Vegetabile* 159. Glashütten: Koeltz Botanical Books; 2018.
- 3300 **8. Sutcliffe IC, Dijkshoorn L, Whitman WB, on behalf of the ICSP Executive Board.** Minutes
3301 of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes online discussion on the
3302 proposed use of gene sequences as type for naming of prokaryotes, and outcome of
3303 vote. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2020;70:4416–4417.
- 3304 **9. Ash C, Priest FG, Collins MD.** *Paenibacillus* gen. nov. In *Validation of the Publication of*
3305 *New Names and New Combinations Previously Effectively Published Outside the IJSB*, List
3306 no. 51. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1994;44:852.
- 3307 **10. Roop RM, Smibert RM, Johnson JL, Krieg NR.** Designation of the neotype strain for
3308 *Campylobacter sputorum* (Prévot) Véron and Chatelain 1973. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3309 1986;36:348.

- 3310 **11. Kelly DP, Wood AP.** Reclassification of some species of *Thiobacillus* to the newly
3311 designated genera *Acidithiobacillus* gen. nov., *Halothiobacillus* gen. nov. and
3312 *Thermithiobacillus* gen. nov. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2000;50:511–516.
- 3313 **12. Sly LI, Cahill MM, Osawa R, Fujisawa T.** The tannin-degrading species *Streptococcus*
3314 *galloyticus* and *Streptococcus caprinus* are subjective synonyms. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3315 1997;47:893–894.
- 3316 **13. Raj HD.** A new species - *Microcyclus flavus*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1970;20:61–81.
- 3317 **14. Cohn F.** Untersuchungen über Bakterien. *Beiträge Biol Pflanz* 1872;1:127–224.
- 3318 **15. Cato EP, Moore WEC, Nygaard G, Holdeman LV.** *Actinomyces meyeri* sp. nov., specific
3319 epithet rev. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1984;34:487–489.
- 3320 **16. Xie CH, Yokota A.** Reclassification of *Alcaligenes latus* strains IAM 12599T and IAM
3321 12664 and *Pseudomonas saccharophila* as *Azohydromonas lata* gen. nov., comb. nov.,
3322 *Azohydromonas australica* sp. nov. and *Pelomonas saccharophila* gen. nov., comb. nov.,
3323 respectively. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2005;55:2419–2425.
- 3324 **17. Goodfellow M, Pirouz T.** Numerical classification of sporoactinomycetes containing
3325 *meso*-diaminopimelic acid in the cell wall. *J Gen Microbiol* 1982;128:503–527.
- 3326 **18. White PB.** Notes on organisms serologically related to *S. enteritidis* Gärtner: I. The
3327 Dublin and Tokyo types of *Salmonella*. *J Hyg (Lond)* 1930;29:443–445.
- 3328 **19. Bergey DH, Harrison FC, Breed RS, Hammer BW, Huntoon FM, et al.** *Bergey's Manual of*
3329 *Determinative Bacteriology*, 1st ed. Washington, DC: Society of American Bacteriologists;
3330 1923.
- 3331 **20. Bernardet J-F, Segers P, Vancanneyt M, Berthe F, Kersters K, et al.** Cutting a gordian
3332 knot: emended classification and description of the genus *Flavobacterium*, emended
3333 description of the family *Flavobacteriaceae*, and proposal of *Flavobacterium hydatis*
3334 nom. nov. (basonym, *Cytophaga aquatilis* Strohl and Tait 1978). *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3335 1996;46:128–148.
- 3336 **21. Pederson CS.** Genus *Lactobacillus* Beijerinck, 1901 In **Breed RS, Murray EGD, Smith NR.**
3337 (eds) *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology*, 7th ed. Baltimore: Williams &
3338 Wilkins; 1957; pp. 542–552.
- 3339 **22. Pridham TG, Lyons AJ, Seckinger HL.** Comparison of some dried holotype and neotype
3340 specimens of streptomycetes with their living counterparts. *Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl*
3341 *Taxon* 1965;15:191–237.
- 3342 **23. Breed RS, Murray EGD, Smith NR.** (eds) *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology*,
3343 7th ed. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins; 1957.

- 3344 **24. Rogosa M.** *Peptococcaceae*, a new family to include the Gram-positive, anaerobic cocci
3345 of the genera *Peptococcus*, *Peptostreptococcus*, and *Ruminococcus*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3346 1971;21:234–237.
- 3347 **25. Bøvre K.** Proposal to divide the genus *Moraxella* Lwoff 1939 emend. Henriksen and
3348 Bøvre 1968 into two subgenera – subgenus *Moraxella* (Lwoff 1939) Bøvre 1979 and
3349 subgenus *Branhamella* (Catlin 1970) Bøvre 1979. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1979;29:403–406.
- 3350 **26. Whitmore A.** An account of a glanders-like disease occurring in Rangoon. *J Hyg (Lond)*
3351 1913;13:1–34.
- 3352 **27. Schwabacher H, Lucas DR, Rimington C.** *Bacterium melaninogenicum*; a misnomer. *J*
3353 *Gen Microbiol* 1947;1:109–120.
- 3354 **28. Lessel EF.** Status of the name *Proteus morgani* and designation of the neotype strain. *Int*
3355 *J Syst Bacteriol* 1971;21:55–57.
- 3356 **29. Buchanan RE, Holt JG, Lessel EF.** *Index Bergeyana. An annotated alphabetic Listing of*
3357 *Names of the Taxa of the Bacteria*. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins; 1966.
- 3358 **30. Sneath PHA.** Correction of orthography of epithets in *Pasteurella* and some problems
3359 with recommendations on latinization. Letter to the Editor. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3360 1992;42:658–659.
- 3361 **31. Buchanan RE, St. John-Brooks R, Breed RS.** International Bacteriological Code of
3362 Nomenclature in 4th International Congress for Microbiology, Report of Proceedings,
3363 July 20–26, 1947, Copenhagen; 1947. pp. 587–606.
- 3364 **32. Buchanan RE, St. John-Brooks R, Breed RS.** International Bacteriological Code of
3365 Nomenclature. *J Bacteriol* 1948;55:287–306.
- 3366 **33. Buchanan RE, St. John-Brooks R, Breed RS.** International Bacteriological Code of
3367 Nomenclature. *J Gen Microbiol* 1949;3:444–462.
- 3368 **34. International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Viruses.** Ames, IA: State College
3369 Press; 1958.
- 3370 **35. Editorial Board.** International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria (1966 Revision). *Int J*
3371 *Syst Bacteriol* 1966;16:459–490.
- 3372 **36. Lapage SP, Sneath PHA, Lessel EF, Skerman VBD, Seeliger HPR, et al. (eds).**
3373 *International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Statutes of the International*
3374 *Committee on Systematic Bacteriology and Statutes of the Bacteriology Section of the*
3375 *International Association of Microbiological Societies (1976 Revision)*. Washington, DC:
3376 American Society for Microbiology; 1975. (Russian translation published 1978 by USSR
3377 Academy of Sciences, Moscow; Japanese translation published 1982 by Center for

- 3378 Academic Publications, Tokyo; Chinese translation published 1989 by Science Press,
3379 Beijing.)
- 3380 **37. Lapage SP, Sneath PHA, Lessel EF, Skerman VBD, Seeliger HPR, et al. (eds).**
3381 *International Code of Nomenclature of Bacteria and Statutes of the International*
3382 *Committee on Systematic Bacteriology and Statutes of the Bacteriology and Applied*
3383 *Microbiology Section of the International Union of Microbiological Societies (1990*
3384 *Revision)*. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1992.
3385 <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK8817/> [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3386 **38. Turland NJ, Wiersema JH, Barrie FR, Greuter W, Hawksworth DL, et al. (eds).**
3387 *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants (Shenzhen Code)*
3388 *adopted by the Nineteenth International Botanical Congress Shenzhen, China, July 2017.*
3389 *Regnum Vegetabile 159*. Glashütten: Koeltz Botanical Books; 2018. [https://www.iapt-](https://www.iapt-taxon.org/nomen/main.php)
3390 [taxon.org/nomen/main.php](https://www.iapt-taxon.org/nomen/main.php) [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3391 **39. Brickell CD, Alexander C, Cubey JJ, David JC, Hoffman MHA, et al. International Code of**
3392 *Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*. 9th ed. Scripta Horticulturae 18. Leuven: ISHS; 2016.
3393 [https://www.ishs.org/scripta-horticulturae/international-code-nomenclature-cultivated-](https://www.ishs.org/scripta-horticulturae/international-code-nomenclature-cultivated-plants-ninth-edition)
3394 [plants-ninth-edition](https://www.ishs.org/scripta-horticulturae/international-code-nomenclature-cultivated-plants-ninth-edition) [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3395 **40. International Code of Zoological Nomenclature**, 4th ed. London, UK: The International
3396 Trust for Zoological Nomenclature; 1999. [https://www.iczn.org/the-code/the-code-](https://www.iczn.org/the-code/the-code-online/)
3397 [online/](https://www.iczn.org/the-code/the-code-online/) [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3398 **41. The International Code of Virus Classification and Nomenclature**. ICTV Code; 2018.
3399 [https://talk.ictvonline.org/information /w/ictv-information/383/ictv-code](https://talk.ictvonline.org/information/w/ictv-information/383/ictv-code) [Accessed
3400 29.07.2022]
- 3401 **42. Greuter W, Garrity GM, Hawksworth DL, Jahn R, Kirk PM, et al. Draft BioCode (2011):**
3402 Principles and rules regulating the naming of organisms. *Taxon* 2011;60:201–212.
3403 <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/tax.601019> [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3404 **43. Theurillat J-P, Willner W, Fernández-González F, Bültmann H, Čarni A, et al.**
3405 International Code of Phytosociological Nomenclature. 4th edition. *Appl Veget Sci Appl*
3406 *Veg Sci*. 2021;24:e12491. <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/full/10.1111/avsc.12491>
3407 [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3408 **44. Skerman VBD, Sneath PHA, McGowan V. Approved Lists of Bacterial Names.** *Int J Syst*
3409 *Bacteriol* 1980;30:225–420.

- 3410 **45. Hill LR, Skerman VBD, Sneath PHA.** Corrigenda to the Approved Lists of Bacterial Names
3411 edited for the International Committee on Systematic Bacteriology. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3412 1984;34:508-511.
- 3413 **46. Skerman VBD, McGowan V, Sneath PHA.** Approved Lists of Bacterial Names. Amended
3414 edition. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, 1989.
- 3415 **47. Sneath PHA.** The preparation of the approved lists of bacterial names. *Int J Syst Evol*
3416 *Microbiol* 2005;55:2247–2249.
- 3417 **48. Gibbons NE, Pattee KB, Holt JG.** *Supplement to Index Bergeyana*. Baltimore: The
3418 Williams & Wilkins Co; 1982.
- 3419 **49. Moore WEC, Cato EP, Moore LVH (eds).** Index of the Bacterial and Yeast Nomenclatural
3420 Changes Published in the *International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology* since the 1980
3421 Approved Lists of Bacterial Names (1 January 1980 to 1 January 1985). *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3422 1985;35:382–407.
- 3423 **50. Moore WEC, Moore LVH (eds).** *Index of the Bacterial and Yeast Nomenclatural Changes*
3424 *Published in the International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology since the 1980*
3425 *Approved Lists of Bacterial Names (1 January 1980 to 1 January 1989)*. Washington, DC:
3426 American Society for Microbiology; 1989.
- 3427 **51. Garrity GM, Lilburn TG, Cole JR, Harrison SH, Euzéby J, et al. 2007.** The Taxonomic
3428 Outline of Bacteria and Archaea, Release 7.7. Michigan State University Board of
3429 Trustees. <http://doi.org/10.1601/toba7.7> [Accessed 19.12.2021]
- 3430 **52. Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria.** Published by John Wiley &
3431 Sons, Inc., in association with Bergey's Manual Trust.
3432 <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/book/10.1002/9781118960608> [Accessed
3433 29.07.2022]
- 3434 **53. Dye DW, Bradbury JF, Goto M, Hayward AC, Lelliott RA, et al.** Standards for naming
3435 pathovars of phytopathogenic bacteria and a list of pathovar names and pathotype
3436 strains. *Rev Plant Pathol* 1980;59:153–168.
- 3437 **54. Hauer T, Komárek J.** CyanoDB 2.0 - On-line database of cyanobacterial genera. - *World-*
3438 *wide electronic publication, Univ. of South Bohemia & Inst. of Botany AS CR*; 2020.
3439 <http://www.cyanodb.cz> [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3440 **55. Silva PC.** *Names of Classes and Families of Living Algae with Special Reference to Their*
3441 *Use in the Index Nominum Genericorum (Plantarum) (Regnum Vegetabile vol. 103)*.
3442 Utrecht: Bohn, Scheltema & Holkema; 1980.

- 3443 **56. Farr ER, Leussink JA, Stafleu FA (eds).** *Index Nominum Genericorum (Plantarum)*, vols. 3
 3444 (*Regnum Vegetabile* vol. 100–102). Utrecht: Bohn, Scheltema & Holkema; 1979.
- 3445 **57. Farr ER, Leussink JA, Zijlstra G (eds).** *Index Nominum Genericorum (Plantarum)*
 3446 *Supplementum I (Regnum Vegetabile* vol. 113). Utrecht: Bohn, Scheltema & Holkema;
 3447 1986.
- 3448 **58. Fourtanier E, Kociolek JP (comps).** Catalogue of Diatom Names, California Academy of
 3449 Sciences (updated 19 Sep 2011). Available online at:
 3450 <http://researcharchive.calacademy.org/research/diatoms/names/index.asp> [Accessed
 3451 29.07.2022]
- 3452 **59. Guiry MD, Guiry GM.** AlgaeBase. World-wide electronic publication, National University
 3453 of Ireland, Galway. Available online at: www.algaebase.org [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3454 **60. Kusber W-H, Jahn R.** Annotated list of diatom names by Horst Lange-Bertalot and co-
 3455 workers. Version 3.0; 2003. Available online at:
 3456 www.algaterra.org/Names_Version3_0.pdf [Accessed 29.07.2022]
- 3457 **61. Neave SA (ed).** *Nomenclator Zoologicus, 1758–1935*. 4 vols, 3 suppl. London: Zoological
 3458 Society; 1939.
- 3459 **62. Sharpe D (ed).** *Index Zoologicus, 1800–1900*. London: Zoological Society; 1902. Index
 3460 Zoologicus. 1902–present. London: Zoological Society.
- 3461 **63. Levine ND, Corliss JO, Cox FE, Deroux G, Grain J, et al.** A newly revised classification of
 3462 the protozoa. *J Protozool* 1980;27:37–58.
- 3463 **64. Aescht E.** *Catalogue of the Generic Names of Ciliates (Protozoa, Ciliophora)*. Linz, Austria:
 3464 Oberoesterreichisches Landesmuseum; 2001.
- 3465 **65. Hawksworth DL, Sutton BC, Ainsworth GC.** *Ainsworth & Bisby's Dictionary of the Fungi*,
 3466 7th ed. Kew: Commonwealth Mycological Institute; 1983.
- 3467 **66.** Index to Fungi. 1940–present (semi-annual). Wallingford: CAB International.
- 3468 **67. Kirk P, Cannon P, Stalpers J, Minter D (ed).** *Dictionary of the Fungi*, 10th ed. CABI
 3469 International; 2008.
- 3470 **68. Kurtzman CP, Fell JW (ed).** *The Yeasts: A Taxonomic Study*, 4th ed. Elsevier; 1998.
- 3471 **69. Robert V, Stegehuis G, Stalpers J.** The MycoBank engine and related databases.
 3472 Available online at www.mycobank.org [Accessed 19.12.2021]
- 3473 **70. Matthews REF.** Classification and Nomenclature of Viruses. Fourth Report of the
 3474 International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses. *Intervirology* 1982;17:1–200.
- 3475 **71. Wildy P (ed).** *Classification and Nomenclature of Viruses. First Report of the International*
 3476 *Committee on Nomenclature of Viruses*. Basel: S. Karger; 1971.

- 3477 **72.** Species 2000 & IT IS. Catalogue of Life, www.catalogueoflife.org [Accessed: 19.12.2021].
3478 Naturalis, Leiden, the Netherlands.
- 3479 **73. Chun J, Oren A, Ventosa A, Christensen H, Arahal DR, et al.** Minimal standards for the
3480 use of genome data for the taxonomy of prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3481 2018;68:461-466.
- 3482 **74. Logan NA, Berge O, Bishop AH, Busse H-J, De Vos P, et al.** Proposed minimal standards
3483 for describing new taxa of aerobic, endospore-forming bacteria. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3484 2009;59:2114–2121.
- 3485 **75. Mattarelli P, Holzapfel W, Franz CMAP, Endo A, Felis GE, et al.** Recommended minimal
3486 standards for description of new taxa of the genera *Bifidobacterium*, *Lactobacillus* and
3487 related genera. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2014;64:1434–1451.
- 3488 **76. Corbel MJ, Brinley Morgan WJ.** Proposal for minimal standards for descriptions of new
3489 species and biotypes of the genus *Brucella*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1975;25:83–89.
- 3490 **77. Corbel MJ, Brinley Morgan WJ.** Proposal for minimal standards for descriptions of new
3491 species and biotypes of the genus *Brucella* (erratum). *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1975;25:243.
- 3492 **78. Ursing JB, Lior H, Owen RJ.** Proposal of minimal standards for describing new species of
3493 the family *Campylobacteraceae*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1994;44:842–845.
- 3494 **79. On S, Miller WG, Houf K, Fox JG, Vandamme P.** Minimal standards for describing new
3495 species belonging to the families *Campylobacteraceae* and *Helicobacteraceae*:
3496 *Campylobacter*, *Arcobacter*, *Helicobacter* and *Wolinella* spp. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3497 2017;67:5296-5311.
- 3498 **80. Bernardet J-F, Nakagawa Y, Holmes B, Subcommittee on the taxonomy of**
3499 ***Flavobacterium* and *Cytophaga*-like bacteria of the International Committee on**
3500 **Systematics of Prokaryotes.** Proposed minimal standards for describing new taxa of the
3501 family *Flavobacteriaceae* and emended description of the family. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3502 2002;52:1049–1070.
- 3503 **81. Oren A, Ventosa A, Grant WD.** Proposed minimal standards for description of new taxa
3504 in the order *Halobacteriales*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1997;47:233–238.
- 3505 **82. Arahal DR, Vreeland RH, Litchfield CD, Mormile MR, Tindall BJ, et al.** Recommended
3506 minimal standards for describing new taxa of the family *Halomonadaceae*. *Int J Syst Evol*
3507 *Microbiol* 2007;57:2436–2446.
- 3508 **83. Arahal DR, Vreeland RH, Litchfield CD, Mormile MR, Tindall BJ, et al.** Recommended
3509 minimal standards for describing new taxa of the family *Halomonadaceae*. Erratum. *Int J*
3510 *Syst Evol Microbiol* 2008;58:2673.

- 3511 **84. Dewhirst FE, Fox JG, On SL.** Recommended minimal standards for describing new
3512 species of the genus *Helicobacter*. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2000;50:2231–2237.
- 3513 **85. On S, Miller WG, Houf K, Fox JG, Vandamme P.** Minimal standards for describing new
3514 species belonging to the families *Campylobacteraceae* and *Helicobacteraceae*:
3515 *Campylobacter*, *Arcobacter*, *Helicobacter* and *Wolinella* spp. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3516 2017;67:5296-5311.
- 3517 **86. Boone DR, Whitman WB.** Proposal of minimal standards for describing new taxa of
3518 methanogenic bacteria. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1988;38:212–219.
- 3519 **87. Schumann P, Kämpfer P, Busse H-J, Evtushenko LI, for the Subcommittee on the**
3520 **Taxonomy of the Suborder *Micrococcineae* of the International Committee on**
3521 **Systematics of Prokaryotes.** Proposed minimal standards for describing new genera and
3522 species of the suborder *Micrococcineae*. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2009;59:1823–1849.
- 3523 **88. International Committee on Systematic Bacteriology Subcommittee on the Taxonomy**
3524 **of Mollicutes.** Proposal of minimal standards for descriptions of new species of the class
3525 *Mollicutes*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1979;29:172–180.
- 3526 **89. Brown DR, Whitcomb RF, Bradbury JM.** Revised minimal standards for description of
3527 new species of the class *Mollicutes* (division *Tenericutes*). *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3528 2007;57:2703–2719.
- 3529 **90. Whitcomb RF.** Evolution and devolution of minimal standards for descriptions of species
3530 of the class *Mollicutes*: analysis of two *Spiroplasma* descriptions. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3531 2007;57:201–206.
- 3532 **91. Bøvre K, Henriksen SD.** Minimal standards for description of new taxa within the genera
3533 *Moraxella* and *Acinetobacter*: Proposal by the Subcommittee on *Moraxella* and Allied
3534 Bacteria. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1976;26:92–96.
- 3535 **92. Lévy-Frébault VV, Portaels F.** Proposed minimal standards for the genus *Mycobacterium*
3536 and for description of new slowly growing *Mycobacterium* species. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3537 1992;42:315–323.
- 3538 **93. International Committee on Systematic Bacteriology Subcommittee on the Taxonomy**
3539 **of *Mycoplasmatales*.** Minutes of Meeting, 5 and 6 September 1973, Jerusalem, Israel.
3540 *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1972;22:184–188.
- 3541 **94. Christensen H, Kuhnert P, Busse H-J, Frederiksen WC, Bisgaard M.** Proposed minimal
3542 standards for the description of genera, species and subspecies of the *Pasteurellaceae*.
3543 *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2007;57:166–178.

- 3544 **95. de Lajudie PM, Andrews M, Ardley J, Eardly B Jumas-Bilak E, et al.** Minimal standards
3545 for the description of new genera and species of rhizobia and agrobacteria. *Int J Syst Evol*
3546 *Microbiol* 2019;69:1852-1863.
- 3547 **96. Graham PH, Sadowsky MJ, Keyser HH, Bernet YM, Bradley RS, et al.** Proposed minimal
3548 standards for the description of new genera and species of root- and stem-nodulating
3549 bacteria. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1991;41:582–587.
- 3550 **97. Freney J, Kloos WE, Hajek V, Webster JA, Bes M, et al.** Recommended minimal
3551 standards for description of new staphylococcal species. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3552 1999;49:489–502.
- 3553 **98. Young JM, Bradbury JF, Gardan L, Gvozdyak RI, Stead DE, et al.** Comment on the
3554 Reinstatement of *Xanthomonas citri* (ex Hasse 1915) Gabriel et al. 1989 and *X. phaseoli*
3555 (ex Smith 1897) Gabriel et al. 1989: Indication of the Need for Minimal Standards for the
3556 Genus *Xanthomonas*. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1991;41:172–177.
- 3557 **99. Oren A.** How to name new taxa of archaea and bacteria. In: Bergey's Manual of
3558 Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria. John Wiley & Sons, in association with Bergey's
3559 Manual Trust; 2019. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781118960608.bm00008.pub2> [Accessed
3560 29.07.2022]
- 3561 **100. Trüper HG.** How to name a prokaryote? Etymological considerations, proposals and
3562 practical advice in prokaryote nomenclature. *FEMS Microbiol Rev* 1999;23:231–249.
- 3563 **101. Trüper HG, Euzéby JP.** International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. Appendix
3564 9: Orthography. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2009;59:2107–2113.
- 3565 **102. Buchanan RE.** Chemical terminology and microbiological nomenclature. *Int Bull*
3566 *Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon* 1960;10:16-22; Reprinted: *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1994;44:588–
3567 590.
- 3568 **103. MacAdoo TO.** Nomenclatural literacy. In: Goodfellow M and O'Donnell AG (eds).
3569 *Handbook of New Bacterial Systematics*. London: Academic Press; 1993. pp. 339–358.
- 3570 **104. Oren A.** Proposal to change Recommendation 12c of the International Code of
3571 Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2015;65:4288.
- 3572 **105. Oren A, Schink B.** Formation of names of genera of prokaryotes that end on *-oides*
3573 or *-opsis*: A proposal for addenda to Rule 65(2) and to Appendix 9 of the International
3574 Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2016;66:2452–2453.
- 3575 **106. Oren A, Schink B.** Use of Greek in prokaryotic nomenclature: proposal to change
3576 Principle 3, Recommendation 6, Rule 7, Rule 65 and Appendix 9 of the International
3577 Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2020;70:3559–3560.

- 3578 **107. Oren A, Schink B.** Further guidelines for the formation of compound specific and
3579 subspecific epithets. A proposal to emend Appendix 9 of the International Code of
3580 Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2020;70:3561–3562.
- 3581 **108. Oren A, Vandamme P, Schink B.** Notes on the use of Greek roots in the genus and
3582 species names of prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2016;66:2129–2140.
- 3583 **109. Oren A, Garrity GM, Schink B, Ventura S.** ‘Localimania’ revisited: guidelines for the
3584 formation of specific epithets for names of prokaryotes based on names of institutions
3585 or their acronyms. A proposal for emendation of Appendix 9 to the International Code of
3586 Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2017;67:1618–1619.
- 3587 **110. Oren A, Chuvochina M, Schink B.** The use of Greek and Latin prepositions and
3588 prefixes in compound names: proposed emendation of Appendix 9 of the International
3589 Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2019;69:1831–1832.
- 3590 **111. Oren A, Chuvochina M, Ventura S.** Formation of compound generic names based on
3591 personal names: a proposal for emendation of Appendix 9 of the International Code of
3592 Nomenclature of Prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2019;69:594–596.
- 3593 **112. Trüper HG.** Help! Latin! How to avoid the most common mistakes while giving Latin
3594 names to newly discovered prokaryotes. *Microbiologia* 1996;12:473–475.
- 3595 **113. Trüper HG.** How to name a prokaryote? Etymological considerations, proposals and
3596 practical advice in prokaryote nomenclature. *FEMS Microbiol Rev* 1999;23:231–249.
- 3597 **114. Trüper HG.** Etymology in nomenclature of prokaryotes. In: Boone DR, Castenholz RW
3598 and Garrity GM. (eds) *Bergey’s Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*, 2nd edn, vol. 1, New
3599 York: Springer; 2001. pp. 89–99.
- 3600 **115. Trüper HG.** The use of Neolatin in biological nomenclature. *Neulateinisches Jahrb J*
3601 *Neo-Latin Lang Lit* 2004;6:318–327.
- 3602 **116. Trüper HG.** Is ‘localimania’ becoming a fashion for prokaryote taxonomists? *Int J Syst*
3603 *Evol Microbiol* 2005;55:1753.
- 3604 **117. Trüper HG.** Neo-Latinists worldwide willing to help microbiologists. *Int J Syst Evol*
3605 *Microbiol* 2007;57:1164–1166.
- 3606 **118. Murray RGE, Schleifer KH.** Taxonomic notes: a proposal for recording the properties
3607 of putative taxa of prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1994;44:174–176.
- 3608 **119.** Judicial Commission of the IJSB. Minutes of the meetings, 2 and 6 July 1994, Prague,
3609 Czech Republic. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1995;45:195–196.

- 3610 **120. Murray RE, Stackebrandt E.** Taxonomic Note: Implementation of the provisional
3611 status *Candidatus* for incompletely described prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Bacteriol*
3612 1995;45:186–187.
- 3613 **121. Oren A.** A plea for linguistic accuracy – also for *Candidatus* taxa. *Int J Syst Evol*
3614 *Microbiol* 2017;67:1085–1094.
- 3615 **122. Whitman WB.** Modest proposals to expand the type material for naming of
3616 prokaryotes. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2016;66:2108–2112.
- 3617 **123. Whitman WB, Sutcliffe IC, Rossello-Mora R.** Proposal for changes in the
3618 International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes: granting priority to *Candidatus*
3619 names. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2019;69:2174–2175.
- 3620 **124. Sutcliffe IC, Dijkshoorn L, Whitman WB, on behalf of the ICSP Executive Board.**
3621 Minutes of the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes online discussion
3622 on the proposed use of gene sequences as type for naming of prokaryotes, and outcome
3623 of vote. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2020;70:4416–4417.
- 3624 **125. Oren A, Garrity GM, Parker CT, Chuvochina M, Trujillo ME.** Lists of names of
3625 prokaryotic *Candidatus* taxa. *Candidatus* List no. 1. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3626 2020;70:3956–4042.
- 3627 **126. Oren A, Garrity GM, Trujillo ME.** Registration of names of prokaryotic *Candidatus*
3628 taxa in the IJSEM. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2020;70:3955.
- 3629 **127. Oren A, Garrity GM.** Lists of names of prokaryotic *Candidatus* taxa. *Candidatus* List
3630 no. 2. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2021;71:004671.
- 3631 **128. Oren A, Garrity GM.** Lists of names of prokaryotic *Candidatus* taxa. *Candidatus* List
3632 no. 3. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 2022;72:005186
- 3633 **129. Sutcliffe IC, Whitman BW, on behalf of the ICSP.** The van Niel International Prize for
3634 Studies in Bacterial Systematics, awarded in 2020 to Tanja Woyke. *Int J Syst Evol*
3635 *Microbiol* 2020;70:5594–5595.
- 3636 **130. Dijkshoorn L.** International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes. Minutes of
3637 the meetings, 7, 8 and 9 July 2017, Valencia, Spain. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol*
3638 2018;68:2104–2110.
- 3639 **131. Dijkshoorn L.** Minutes of the International Committee on Systematics of
3640 Prokaryotes. Minutes of the miniplenary meeting 11 July 2019, Glasgow, Scotland. *Int J*
3641 *Syst Evol Microbiol* 2021;71:004706.